



(11) Publication number : 0 622 741 A2

(12)

## EUROPEAN PATENT APPLICATION

(21) Application number : 94302323.4

(31) Int. Cl.<sup>5</sup> : G06F 15/332, H04N 7/13,  
G06F 15/64

(22) Date of filing : 30.03.94

The application is published incomplete as filed (Article 93 (2) EPC). The point in the description or the claim(s) at which the omission obviously occurs has been left blank.

(30) Priority : 30.03.93 US 40301  
30.07.93 US 100747  
01.10.93 US 130571

(43) Date of publication of application :  
02.11.94 Bulletin 94/44

(84) Designated Contracting States :  
AT BE CH DE DK ES FR GB GR IE IT LU MC  
NL PT SE

(71) Applicant : KLIJCS, Ltd.  
P.P. Box 570,  
No.1, Le Couteur Court,  
Mulcaster Street,  
St Heller  
Jersey JE4 8X2, Channel Islands (GB)

(72) Inventor : Knowles, Gregory P.  
Calle Menorca 18-2-B  
E-07011 Palma (ES)

(74) Representative : Jones, Ian  
W.P. THOMSON & CO.  
Colcon House  
289-293 High Holborn  
London WC1V 7HU (GB)

(54) Device and method for data compression/decompression.

(57) An apparatus produces an encoded and compressed digital data stream from an original input digital data stream using a forward discrete wavelet transform and a tree encoding method. The input digital data stream may be a stream of video image data values in digital form. The apparatus is also capable of producing a decoded and decompressed digital data stream closely resembling the originally input digital data stream from an encoded and compressed digital data stream using a corresponding tree decoding method and a corresponding inverse discrete wavelet transform. A dual convolver is disclosed which performs both boundary and nonboundary filtering for forward transform discrete wavelet processing and which also performs filtering of corresponding inverse transform discrete wavelet processes. A portion of the dual convolver is also usable to filter an incoming stream of digital video image data values before forward discrete wavelet processing. Methods and structures for generating the addresses to read/write data values from/to memory as well as for reducing the total amount of memory necessary to store data values are also disclosed.

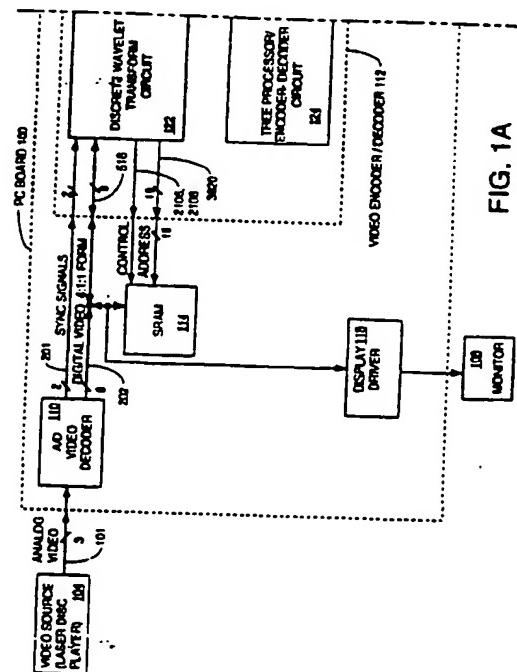


FIG. 1A

EP 0 622 741 A2

CROSS REFERENCE TO PAPER APPENDICES

5 Appendix A, which is a part of the present disclosure, is a paper appendix of 6 pages. Appendix A is a description of a CONTROL\_ENABLE block contained in the tree processor/encoder-decoder portion of a video encoder/decoder integrated circuit chip, written in the VHDL hardware description language.

10 Appendix B, which is a part of the present disclosure, is a paper appendix of 10 pages. Appendix B is a description of a MODE\_CONTROL block contained in the tree processor/encoder-decoder portion of a video encoder/decoder integrated circuit chip, written in the VHDL hardware description language.

15 Appendix C, which is a part of the present disclosure, is a paper appendix of 11 pages. Appendix C is a description of a CONTROL\_COUNTER block contained in the tree processor/encoder-decoder portion of a video encoder/decoder integrated circuit chip, written in the VHDL hardware description language.

A portion of the disclosure of this patent document contains material which is subject to copyright protection. The copyright owner has no objection to the facsimile reproduction by anyone of the patent document or the patent disclosure, as it appears in the Patent and Trademark Office patent files or records, but otherwise reserves all copyright rights whatsoever. The VHDL hardware description language of Appendices A, B and C is an international standard, IEEE Standard 1076-1987, and is described in the "IEEE Standard VHDL Language Reference Manual".

20 Appendix D, which is a part of the present disclosure, is a paper appendix of 181 pages. Appendix D is a description of one embodiment of a video encoder/decoder integrated circuit chip in the VHDL hardware description language. The VHDL hardware description language of Appendix D is an international standard, IEEE Standard 1076-1987, and is described in the "IEEE Standard VHDL Language Reference Manual". The "IEEE Standard VHDL Language Reference Manual" can be obtained from the Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers, Inc., 445 Hoes Lane, Piscataway, New Jersey 08855, telephone 1-800-678-4333.

25 DESCRIPTION

This invention relates to a method and apparatus for compressing, decompressing, transmitting, and/or storing digitally encoded data. In particular, this invention relates to the compression and decompression of digital video image data.

30 An apparatus produces an encoded/compressed digital data stream from an original input digital data stream using a discrete wavelet transform and a tree encoding method. The apparatus is also capable of producing a decoded/decompressed digital data stream closely resembling the originally input digital data stream from an encoded/compressed digital data stream using a corresponding tree decoding method and a corresponding inverse discrete wavelet transform.

35 The apparatus comprises a discrete wavelet transform circuit which is capable of being configured to perform either a discrete wavelet transform or a corresponding inverse discrete wavelet transform. The discrete wavelet transform circuit comprises an address generator which generates the appropriate addresses to access data values stored in memory. Methods and structures for reducing the total amount of memory necessary to store data values and for taking advantage of various types of memory devices including dynamic random access memory (DRAM) devices are disclosed. A convolver circuit of the discrete wavelet transform circuit performs both boundary and non-boundary filtering for the forward discrete wavelet transform and performs start, odd, even and end reconstruction filtering for the inverse discrete wavelet transform. The convolver may serve the dual functions of 1) reducing the number of image data values before subsequent forward discrete wavelet transforming, and 2) operating on the reduced number of image data values to perform the forward discrete wavelet transform.

40 The apparatus also comprises a tree processor/encoder-decoder circuit which is configurable in an encoder mode or in a decoder mode. In the encoder mode, the tree processor/encoder-decoder circuit generates addresses to traverse trees of data values of a sub-band decomposition, generates tokens, and quantizes and Huffman encodes selected transformed data values stored in memory. In the decoder mode, the tree processor/decoder-encoder circuit receives Huffman encoded data values and tokens, Huffman decodes and inverse quantizes the encoded data values, recreates trees of transformed data values from the tokens and data values, and stores the recreated trees of data values in memory.

45 The apparatus is useful in, but not limited to, the fields of video data storage, video data transmission, television, video telephony, computer networking, and other fields of digital electronics in which efficient storage and/or transmission and/or retrieval of digitally encoded data is needed. The apparatus facilitates the efficient and inexpensive compression and storage of video and/or audio on compact laser discs (commonly known as CDs) as well as the efficient and inexpensive storage of video and/or audio on digital video tapes (commonly known as VCR or "video cassette recorder" tapes). Similarly, the invention facilitates the efficient

and inexpensive retrieval and decompression of video and/or audio from digital data storage media including CDs and VCR tapes.

The invention is further described below, by way of example, with reference to the accompanying drawings, in which:

5 Figure 1 is a block diagram of an expansion printed circuit board which is insertable into a card slot of a personal computer.

Figure 2 is a block diagram of an embodiment of the analog/digital video decoder chip depicted in Figure 1.

10 Figures 3A-C illustrate a 4:1:1 luminance-chrominance-chrominance format (Y:U:V) used by the expansion board of Figure 1.

Figure 4 is an illustration of a timeline of the output values output from the analog/digital video decoder chip of Figures 1 and 2.

Figure 5 is a block diagram of the discrete wavelet transform circuit of the video encoder/decoder chip of Figure 1.

15 Figure 6 is a block diagram of the row convolver block of Figure 5.

Figure 7 is a block diagram of the column convolver block of Figure 5.

Figure 8 is a block diagram of the wavelet transform multiplier circuit blocks of Figures 6 and 7.

Figure 9 is a block diagram of the row wavelet transform circuit block of Figure 8.

20 Figure 10 is a diagram illustrating control signals which control the row convolver of Figure 5 and signals output by the row convolver of Figure 5 during a forward octave 0 transform.

Figure 11 is a diagram showing data flow in the row convolver of Figure 5 during a forward octave 0 transform.

Figure 12 is a diagram illustrating data values output by the row convolver of Figure 5 during the forward octave 0 transform.

25 Figure 13 is a block diagram of the column wavelet transform circuit block of Figure 7.

Figure 14 is a diagram illustrating control signals which control the column convolver of Figure 5 and signals output by the column convolver of Figure 5 during a forward octave 0 transform.

Figure 15 is a diagram showing data flow in the column convolver of Figure 5 during a forward octave 0 transform.

30 Figure 16 is a diagram illustrating data values present in memory unit 118 of Figure 1 after operation of the column convolver of Figure 5 during the forward octave 0 transform.

Figure 17 is a diagram showing control signals controlling the row convolver of Figure 5 and signals output by the row convolver of Figure 5 during a forward octave 1 transform.

35 Figure 18 is a diagram showing data flow in the row convolver of Figure 5 during a forward octave 1 transform.

Figure 19 is a diagram showing control signals controlling the column convolver of Figure 5 and signals output by the column convolver of Figure 5 during a forward octave 1 transform.

Figure 20 is a diagram showing data flow in the column convolver of Figure 5 during a forward octave 1 transform.

40 Figure 21 is a block diagram of one embodiment of the control block 506 of the discrete wavelet transform circuit of Figure 5.

Figure 22 is a diagram showing control signals controlling the column convolver of Figure 5 and signals output by the column convolver of Figure 5 during an inverse octave 1 transform.

45 Figure 23 is a diagram showing data flow in the column convolver of Figure 5 during a forward octave 1 transform.

Figure 24 is a diagram showing control signals controlling the row convolver of Figure 5 and signals output by the row convolver of Figure 5 during an inverse octave 1 transform.

Figure 25 is a diagram showing data flow in the row convolver of Figure 5 during an inverse octave 1 transform.

50 Figure 26 is a diagram showing control signals controlling the column convolver of Figure 5 and signals output by the column convolver of Figure 5 during an inverse octave 0 transform.

Figure 27 is a diagram showing data flow in the column convolver of Figure 5 during an inverse octave 0 transform.

Figure 28 is a diagram showing control signals controlling the row convolver of Figure 5 and signals output by the row convolver of Figure 5 during an inverse octave 0 transform.

55 Figure 29 is a diagram showing data flow in the row convolver of Figure 5 during an inverse octave 0 transform.

Figure 30 is a block diagram of the DWT address generator block of the discrete wavelet transform circuit

of Figure 5.

Figure 31 is a block diagram of the tree processor/encoder-decoder circuit 124 of Figure 1, simplified to illustrate an encoder mode.

5 Figure 32 is a block diagram of the tree processor/encoder-decoder circuit 124 of Figure 1, simplified to illustrate a decoder mode.

Figure 33 is a block diagram of the decide circuit block 3112 of the tree processor/encoder-decoder of Figures 31-32.

10 Figure 34 is a block diagram of the tree processor address generator TP\_ADDR\_GEN block 3114 of the tree processor/encoder-decoder of Figures 31-32.

Figure 35 illustrates the state table for the CONTROL\_ENABLE block 3420 of the tree processor address generator of Figure 34.

15 Figure 36 is a graphical illustration of the tree decomposition process, illustrating the states and corresponding octaves of Figure 35.

Figure 37 is a block diagram of the quantizer circuit block 3116 of the tree processor/encoder-decoder of Figures 31-32.

20 Figure 38 is a block diagram of the buffer block 3122 of the tree processor/encoder-decoder of Figures 31-32.

Figure 39 is a diagram of the buffer block 3122 of Figure 38 which has been simplified to illustrate buffer block 3122 operation in the encoder mode.

25 Figure 40 illustrates the output of barrel shifter 3912 of buffer block 3122 when buffer block 3122 is in the encoder mode as in Figure 39.

Figure 41 is a diagram of the buffer block 3122 of Figure 38 which has been simplified to illustrate buffer block 3122 operation in the decoder mode.

25 Figure 42 illustrates a pipelined encoding-decoding scheme used by the tree processor/encoder-decoder 124 of Figures 31 and 32.

Figure 43 is a block diagram of another embodiment in accordance with the present invention in which the Y:U:V input is in a 4:2:2 format.

30 Figure 44 illustrates a sequence in which luminance data values are read from and written to the new portion of memory unit 116 of the PC board 100 in a first embodiment in accordance with the invention in which memory unit 116 is realized as a static random access memory (SRAM).

Figure 45 illustrates a sequence in which luminance data values are read from and written to the new portion of memory unit 116 of the PC board 100 in a second embodiment in accordance with the present invention in which memory unit 116 is realized as a dynamic random access memory (DRAM).

35 Figure 46 illustrates a third embodiment in accordance with the present invention in which memory unit 116 of the PC board 100 is realized as a dynamic random access memory and in which a series of static random access memories are used as cache buffers between tree processor/encoder-decoder 124 and memory unit 116.

Figure 47 illustrates a time line of the sequence of operations of the circuit illustrated in Figure 46.

40 Figure 1 illustrates a printed circuit expansion board 100 which is insertable into a card slot of a personal computer. Printed circuit board 100 may be used to demonstrate features in accordance with various aspects of the present invention. Printed circuit board 100 receives an analog video signal 101 from an external video source 104 (such as a CD player), converts information in the analog video signal into data in digital form, transforms and compresses the data, and outputs compressed data onto a computer data bus 106 (such as an ISA/NUBUS parallel bus of an IBM PC or IBM PC compatible personal computer). While performing this compression function, the board 100 can also output a video signal which is retrievable from the compressed data. This video signal can be displayed on an external monitor 108. This allows the user to check visually the quality of images which will be retrievable later from the compressed data while the compressed data is being generated. Board 100 can also read previously compressed video data from data bus 106 of the personal computer, decompress and inverse-transform that data into an analog video signal, and output this analog video signal to the external monitor 108 for display.

45 Board 100 comprises an analog-to-digital video decoder 110, a video encoder/decoder integrated circuit chip 112, two static random access memory (SRAM) memory units 114 and 116, a display driver 118, and a first-in-first-out memory 120. Analog-to-digital (A/D) video decoder 110 converts incoming analog video signal 101 into a digital format. Video encoder/decoder chip 112 receives the video signal in the digital format and performs a discrete wavelet transform (DWT) function, and then a tree processing function, and then a Huffman encoding function to produce a corresponding compressed digital data stream. Memory unit 116 stores "new" and "old" DWT-transformed video frames.

50 Video encoder/decoder chip 112 comprises a discrete wavelet transform circuit 122 and a tree proce-

sor/encoder-decoder circuit 124. The discrete wavelet transform circuit 122 performs either a forward discrete wavelet transformation or an inverse discrete wavelet transformation, depending on whether the chip 112 is configured to compress video data or to decompress compressed video data. Similarly, the tree processor/encoder-decoder circuit 124 either encodes wavelet-transformed images into a compressed data stream or decodes a compressed data stream into decompressed images in wavelet transform form, depending on whether the chip 112 is configured to compress or to decompress video data. Video encoder/decoder chip 112 is also coupled to computer bus 106 via a download register bus 128 so that the discrete wavelet transform circuit 122 and the tree processor/encoder-decoder circuit 124 can receive control values (such as a value indicative of image size) from ISA bus 106. The control values are used to control the transformation, tree processing, and encoding/decoding operations. FIFO buffer 120 buffers data flow between the video encoder/decoder chip 112 and the data bus 106. Memory unit 114 stores a video frame in uncompressed digital video format. Display driver chip 118 converts digital video data from either decoder 110 or from memory unit 114 into an analog video signal which can be displayed on external monitor 108.

Figure 2 is a block diagram of analog/digital video decoder 110. Analog/digital video decoder 110 converts the analog video input signal 101 into one 8-bit digital image data output signal 202 and two digital video SYNC output signals 201. The 8-bit digital image output signal 202 contains the pixel luminance values, Y, time multiplexed with the pixel chrominance values, U and V. The video SYNC output signals 201 comprise a horizontal synchronization signal and a vertical synchronization signal.

Figures 3A-C illustrate a 4:1:1 luminance-chrominance-chrominance format (Y:U:V) used by board 100. Because the human eye is less sensitive to chrominance variations than to luminance variations, chrominance values are subsampled such that each pixel shares an 8-bit chrominance value U and an 8-bit chrominance value V with three of its neighboring pixels. The four pixels in the upper-left hand corner of the image, for example, are represented by {Y<sub>00</sub>, U<sub>00</sub>, V<sub>00</sub>}, {Y<sub>01</sub>, U<sub>00</sub>, V<sub>00</sub>}, {Y<sub>10</sub>, U<sub>00</sub>, V<sub>00</sub>}, and {Y<sub>11</sub>, U<sub>00</sub>, V<sub>00</sub>}. The next four pixels to the right are represented by {Y<sub>02</sub>, U<sub>01</sub>, V<sub>01</sub>}, {Y<sub>03</sub>, U<sub>01</sub>, V<sub>01</sub>}, {Y<sub>12</sub>, U<sub>01</sub>, V<sub>01</sub>}, and {Y<sub>13</sub>, U<sub>01</sub>, V<sub>01</sub>}. A/D video decoder 110 serially outputs all the 8-bit Y-luminance values of a frame, followed by all the 8-bit U-chrominance values of the frame, followed by all the 8-bit V-chrominance values of the frame. The Y, U and V values for a frame are output every 1/30 of a second. A/D video decoder 110 outputs values in raster-scan format so that a row of pixel values Y<sub>00</sub>, Y<sub>01</sub>, Y<sub>02</sub> ... is output followed by a second row of pixel values Y<sub>10</sub>, Y<sub>11</sub>, Y<sub>12</sub> ... and so forth until all the values of the frame of Figure 3A are output. The values of Figure 3B are then output row by row and then the values of Figure 3C are output row by row. In this 4:1:1 format, each of the U and V components of the image contains one quarter of the number of data values contained in the Y component.

Figure 4 is a diagram of a timeline of the output of A/D video decoder 110. The bit rate of the decoder output is equal to 30 frames/sec x 12 bits/pixel. For a 640 x 400 pixel image, for example, the data rate is approximately 110 x 10<sup>8</sup> bits/second. A/D video decoder 110 also detects the horizontal and vertical synchronization signals in the incoming analog video input signal 102 and produces corresponding digital video SYNC output signals 201 to the video encoder/decoder chip 112.

The video encoder/decoder integrated circuit chip 112 has two modes of operation. It can either transform and compress ("encode") a video data stream into a compressed data stream or it can inverse transform and decompress ("decode") a compressed data stream into a video data stream. In the compression mode, the digital image data 202 and the synchronization signals 201 are passed from the A/D video decoder 110 to the discrete wavelet transform circuit 122 inside the video encoder/decoder chip 112. The discrete wavelet transform circuit 122 performs a forward discrete wavelet transform operation on the image data and stores the resulting wavelet-transformed image data in the "new" portion of memory unit 116. At various times during this forward transform operation, the "new" portion of memory unit 116 stores intermediate wavelet transform results, such that certain of the memory locations of memory unit 116 are read and overwritten a number of times. The number of times the memory locations are overwritten corresponds to the number of octaves in the wavelet transform. After the image data has been converted into a sub-band decomposition of wavelet-transformed image data, the tree processor/encoder-decoder circuit 124 of encoder/decoder chip 112 reads wavelet-transformed image data of the sub-band decomposition from the "new" portion of memory 116, processes it, and outputs onto lines 130 a compressed ("encoded") digital data stream to FIFO buffer 120. During this tree processing and encoding operation, the tree processor/encoder-decoder circuit 124 also generates a quantized version of the encoded first frame and stores that quantized version in the "old" portion of memory unit 116. The quantized version of the encoded first frame is used as a reference when a second frame of wavelet-transformed image data from the "new" portion of memory unit 116 is subsequently encoded and output to bus 106. While the second frame is encoded and output to bus 106, a quantized version of the encoded second frame is written to the "old" portion of memory unit 116. Similarly, the quantized version of the encoded second frame in the "old" portion of memory unit 116 is later used as a reference for encoding a third frame of image data.

In the decompression mode, compressed ("encoded") data is written into FIFO 120 from data bus 106 and

is read from FIFO 120 into tree processor/encoder-decoder circuit 124 of the video encoder/decoder chip 112. The tree processor/encoder-decoder circuit 124 decodes the compressed data into decompressed wavelet-transformed image data and then stores the decompressed wavelet-transformed image data into the "old" portion of memory unit 116. During this operation, the "new" portion of memory unit 116 is not used. Rather, the tree processor/encoder-decoder circuit 124 reads the previous frame stored in the "old" portion of memory unit 116 and modifies it with information from the data stream received from FIFO 120 in order to generate the next frame. The next frame is written over the previous frame in the same "old" portion of the memory unit 116. Once the decoded wavelet-transformed data of a frame of image data is present in the "old" portion of memory unit 116, the discrete wavelet transform circuit 122 accesses memory unit 116 and performs an inverse discrete wavelet transform operation on the frame of image data. For each successive octave of the inverse transform, certain of the memory locations in the "old" portion of memory unit 116 are read and overwritten. The number of times the locations are overwritten corresponds to the number of octaves in the wavelet transform. On the final octave of the inverse transform which converts the image data from octave-0 transform domain into standard image domain, the discrete wavelet transform circuit 122 writes the resulting decompressed and inverse-transformed image data into memory unit 114. The decompressed and inverse-transformed image data may also be output to the video display driver 118 and displayed on monitor 108.

Figure 5 is a block diagram of the discrete wavelet transform circuit 122 of video encoder/decoder chip 112. The discrete wavelet transform circuit 122 shown enclosed by a dashed line comprises a row convolver block CONV\_ROW 502, a column convolver block CONV\_COL 504, a control block 506, a DWT address generator block 508, a REGISTERS block 536, and three multiplexers, mux1 510, mux2 512, and mux3 514. In order to transform a frame of digital video image data received from A/D video decoder 110 into the wavelet transform domain, a forward two dimensional discrete wavelet transform is performed. Similarly, in order to return the wavelet transform digital data values of the frame into a digital video output suitable for displaying on a monitor such as 108, an inverse two dimensional discrete wavelet transform is performed. In the presently described embodiment of the present invention, four coefficient quasi-Daubechies digital filters are used as set forth in the copending Patent Cooperation Treaty (PCT) application filed March 30, 1994 entitled "Data Compression and Decompression".

The discrete wavelet transform circuit 122 shown in Figure 5 performs a forward discrete wavelet transform as follows. First, a stream of 8-bit digital video image data values is supplied, one value at a time, to the discrete wavelet transform circuit 122 via eight leads 516. The digital video image data values are coupled through multiplexer mux1 510 to the input leads 518 of the row convolver CONV\_ROW block 502. The output leads 520 of CONV\_ROW block 502 are coupled through multiplexer mux2 512 to input leads 522 of the CONV\_COL block 504. The output leads 524 of CONV\_COL block 504 are coupled to data leads 526 of memory unit 116 through multiplexer mux3 so that the data values output from CONV\_COL block 504 can be written to the "new" portion of frame memory unit 116. The writing of the "new" portion of memory unit 116 completes the first pass, or octave, of the forward wavelet transform. To perform the next pass, or octave, of the forward wavelet transform, low pass component data values of the octave 0 transformed data values are read from memory unit 116 and are supplied to input leads 518 of CONV\_ROW block 502 via input leads 526, lines 528 and multiplexer mux1 510. The flow of data proceeds through row convolver CONV\_ROW block 502 and through column convolver CONV\_COL block 504 with the data output from CONV\_COL block 504 again being written into memory unit 116 through multiplexer mux3 514 and leads 526. Control block 506 provides control signals to mux1 510, mux2 512, mux3 514, CONV\_ROW block 502, CONV\_COL block 504, DWT address generator block 508, and memory unit 116 during this process. This process is repeated for each successive octave of the forward transform. The data values read from memory unit 116 for the next octave of the transform are the low pass values written to the memory unit 116 on the previous octave of the transform.

The operations performed to carry out the inverse discrete wavelet transform proceed in an order substantially opposite the operations performed to carry out the forward discrete wavelet transform. The frame of image data begins in the transformed state in memory unit 116. For example, if the highest octave in the forward transform (OCT) is octave 1, then transformed data values are read from memory unit 116 and are supplied to the input leads 522 of the CONV\_COL block 504 via leads 526, lines 528 and multiplexer mux2 512. The data values output from CONV\_COL block 504 are then supplied to the input leads 518 of CONV\_ROW block 502 via lines 525 and multiplexer mux1 510. The data values output from CONV\_ROW block 502 and present on output leads 520 are written into memory unit 116 via lines 532, multiplexer mux3 514 and leads 526. The next octave, octave 0, of the inverse transform proceeds in similar fashion except that the data values output by CONV\_ROW block 502 are the fully inverse-transformed video data which are sent to memory unit 114 via lines 516 rather than to memory unit 116. Control block 506 provides control signals to multiplexer mux1 510, multiplexer mux2 512, multiplexer mux3 514, CONV\_ROW block 502, CONV\_COL block 504, DWT address generator block 508, memory unit 116, and memory unit 114 during this process.

In both forward wavelet transform and inverse wavelet transform operations, the control block 506 is timed by the external video sync signals 201 received from A/D video decoder 110. Control block 506 uses these sync signals as well as register input values ximage, yimage, and direction to generate the appropriate control signals mentioned above. Control block 506 is coupled to: multiplexer mux1 510 via control leads 550, multiplexer mux2 512 via control leads 552, multiplexer mux3 514 via control leads 554, CONV\_ROW block 502 via control leads 546, CONV\_COL block 504 via control leads 548, DWT address generator block 508 via control leads 534, 544, and 556, memory unit 116 via control leads 2108, and memory unit 114 via control leads 2106.

As shown in Figure 5, multiplexer mux1 510 couples one of the following three sets of input signals to input leads 518 of CONV\_ROW block 502, depending on the value of control signals on leads 550 supplied from CONTROL block 506: digital video input data values received on lines 516 from A/D video decoder 110, data values from memory unit 116 or data values from multiplexer mux3 514 received on lines 528, or data values from CONV\_COL block 504 received on lines 525. Multiplexer mux2 512 couples either the data values being output from row convolver CONV\_ROW block 502 or the data values being output from multiplexer mux3 514 received on lines 528 to input leads 522 of CONV\_COL block 504, depending on the value of control signals on lead 552 generated by CONTROL block 506. Multiplexer mux3 514 passes either the data values being output from CONV\_ROW 502 received on lines 532 or the data values being output from CONV\_COL 504 onto lines 523 and leads 526, depending on control signals generated by CONTROL block 506. Blocks CONV\_ROW 502, CONV\_COL 504, CONTROL 506, DWT address generator 508, and REGISTERS 536 of Figure 5 are described below in detail in connection with a forward transformation of a matrix of digital image data values. Lines 516, 532, 528 and 525 as well as input and output leads 518, 520, 522, 524 and 526 are each sixteen bit parallel lines and leads.

Figure 6 is a block diagram of the row convolver CONV\_ROW block 502. Figure 7 is a block diagram of the column convolver CONV\_COL block 504. Figure 21 is a block diagram of the CONTROL block 506 of Figure 5. Figure 30 is a block diagram of the DWT address generator block 508 of Figure 5.

As illustrated in Figure 6, CONV\_ROW block 502 comprises a wavelet transform multiplier circuit 602, a row wavelet transform circuit 604, a delay element 606, a multiplexer MUX 608, and a variable shift register 610. To perform a forward discrete wavelet transform, digital video values are supplied one-by-one to the discrete wavelet transform circuit 122 of the video encoder/decoder chip 112 illustrated in Figure 1. In one embodiment in accordance with the present invention, the digital video values are in the form of a stream of values comprising 8-bit Y (luminance) values, followed by 8-bit U (chrominance) values, followed by 8-bit V (chrominance) values. The digital video data values are input in "raster scan" form. For clarity and ease of explanation, a forward discrete wavelet transform of an eight-by-eight matrix of luminance values Y as described is represented by Table 1. Extending the matrix of Y values to a larger size is straightforward. If the matrix of Y values is an eight-by-eight matrix, then the subsequent U and V matrices will each be four-by-four matrices.

35

	$D_{00}$	$D_{01}$	$D_{02}$	.	.	.	.	$D_{07}$
	$D_{10}$	$D_{11}$	$D_{12}$	.	.	.	.	$D_{17}$
40	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	.
	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	.
	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	.
45	$D_{70}$	$D_{71}$	.	.	.	.	.	$D_{77}$

Table 1.

50

The order of the Y values supplied to the discrete wavelet transform circuit 122 is  $D_{00}, D_{01}, \dots, D_{07}$  in the first row, then  $D_{10}, D_{11}, \dots, D_{17}$  in the second row, and so forth row by row through the values in Table 1. Multiplexer 510 in Figure 5 is controlled by control block 506 to couple this stream of data values to the row convolver CONV\_ROW block 502. The row convolver CONV\_ROW block 502 performs a row convolution of the row data values  $D_{00}, D_{01}, D_{02}, \dots, D_{07}$  with a high pass four coefficient quasi-Daubechies digital filter  $G = (d, c, -b, a)$  and a low pass four coefficient quasi-Daubechies digital filter  $H = (a, b, c, -d)$  where  $a = 11/32$ ,  $b = 19/32$ ,  $c = 5/32$ ,  $d = 3/32$ . The coefficients  $a, b, c, d$  are related to a four coefficient Daubechies wavelet as described in the copending Patent Cooperation Treaty (PCT) application filed March 30, 1994, entitled "Data Compression and Decompression".

The operation of CONV\_ROW block 502 on the data values of Table 1 is explained with reference to Figures 6, 8, 9, 10 and 11. Figure 8 is a detailed block diagram of the wavelet transform multiplier circuit 602 of the CONV\_ROW block. Figure 9 is a detailed block diagram of the row wavelet transform circuit 604 of the CONV\_ROW block. Figure 10 shows a sequence of control signals supplied by the control block 506 of Figure 5 to the row wavelet transform circuit 604 of Figure 9. This sequence of control signals effects a forward one dimensional wavelet transform on the rows of the matrix Table 1. The wavelet transform multiplier circuit 602 of Figure 8 comprises combinatorial logic which multiplies each successive input data value  $x$  by various scaled combinations of coefficients 32a, 32b, 32c, and 32d. This combinational-logic block comprises shift registers 802, 804, 806, and 808 which shift the multibit binary input data value  $x$  to the left by 1, 2, 3, and 4 bits, respectively. Various combinations of these shifted values, as well as the input value  $x$  itself, are supplied to multibit adders 810, 812, 814, 816, and 818. The data outputs 32dx, 32(c-d)x, 32cx, 32ax, 32(a+b)x, 32bx, and 32(c+d)x are therefore available to the row wavelet transform circuit 604 on separate sets of leads as shown in detail in Figures 6 and 9.

The row wavelet transform circuit 604 of Figure 9 comprises sets of multiplexers, adders, and delay elements. Multiplexer mux1 902, multiplexer mux2 904, and multiplexer mux3 906 pass selected ones of the data outputs of the wavelet transform multiplier circuit 602 of Figure 8 as determined by control signals on leads 546 from CONTROL block 506 of Figure 5. These control signals on leads 546 are designated muxsel(1), muxsel(2), and muxsel(3) on Figure 9. The remainder of the control signals on leads 546 supplied from CONTROL block 506 to the row wavelet transform circuit 604 comprise andsel(1), andsel(2), andsel(3), andsel(4), addsel(1), addsel(2), addsel(3), addsel(4), muxandsel(1), muxandsel(2), muxandsel(3), centermuxsel(1) and centermuxsel(2).

Figure 10 shows values of the control signals at different times during a row convolution of the forward transform. For example, at time t=0, the control input signal to multiplexer mux2 904, muxsel(2), is equal to 2. Multiplexer mux2 904 therefore couples its second input leads carrying the value 32(a+b)x to its output leads. Each of multiplexers 908, 910, 912, and 914 either passes the data value on its input leads, or passes a zero, depending on the value of its control signal. Control signals andsel(1) through andsel(4) are supplied to select input leads of multiplexers 908, 910, 912, and 914, respectively. Multiplexers 916, 918, and 920 have similar functionality. The outputs of multiplexers 916, 918, and 920 depend on the values of control signals muxandsel(1) through muxandsel(3), respectively. Multiplexers 922 and 924 pass either the value on their "left" input leads or the value on their "right" input leads, as determined by control select inputs centermuxsel(1) and centermuxsel(2), respectively. Adder/subtractors 926, 928, 930, and 932 either pass the sum or the difference of the values on their left and right input leads, depending on the values of the control signals addsel(1) through addsel(4), respectively. Elements 934, 936, 938, and 940 are one-cycle delay elements which output the data values that were at their respective input leads during the previous time period.

Figure 11 is a diagram of a data flow through the row convolver CONV\_ROW 502 during a forward transform operation on the data values of Table 1 when the control signals 546 controlling the row convolver CONV\_ROW 502 are as shown in Figure 10. At the left hand edge of the matrix of the data values of Table 1, start forward low pass and start forward high pass filters  $G_s$  and  $H_s$  are applied in accordance with equations 22 and 24 of copending Patent Cooperation Treaty (PCT) application filed March 30, 1994, entitled "Data Compression and Decompression" as follows:

$$32H_{00} = 32((a + b)D_{00} + cD_{01} - dD_{02})$$

$$32G_{00} = 32((c + d)D_{00} - bD_{01} + aD_{02})$$

The row wavelet transform circuit of Figure 9 begins applying these start forward low and high pass filters when the control signals for this circuit assume the values at time t=0 as illustrated in Figure 10.

At time t=0, muxsel(2) has a value of 2. Multiplexer mux2 904 therefore outputs the value 32(a+b)D<sub>00</sub> onto its output leads. Muxsel(3) has a value of 3 so multiplexer mux3 906 outputs the value 32(c+d)D<sub>00</sub> into its output leads. Because the control signals andsel(2) and andsel(3) cause multiplexers 910 and 912 to output zeros at t=0 as shown in Figure 10, the output leads of adder/subtractor blocks 928 and 930 carry the values 32(a+b)D<sub>00</sub> and 32(c+d)D<sub>00</sub>, respectively, as shown in Figure 11. These values are supplied to the input leads of delay elements 936 and 938. Delay elements 936 and 938 in the case of the row transform are one time unit delay elements. The control signals centermuxsel(1) and centermuxsel(2) have no effect at t=0, because control signals andsel(2) and andsel(3) cause multipliers 910 and 912 to output zeros.

At time t=1, input data value  $x$  is the data value D<sub>01</sub>. Control signal muxsel(2) is set to 1 so that multiplexer mux2 904 outputs the value 32bD<sub>01</sub>. The select signal centermuxsel(1) for adder/subtractor block 922 is set to pass the value on its right input leads. The value 32(c+d)D<sub>00</sub>, the output of adder/subtractor block 930 at t=0, is therefore passed through multiplexer mux4 922 due to the one time unit delay of delay element 938. The control signal andsel(2) is set to pass, so the two values supplied to the adder/subtractor block 928 are 32(c+d)D<sub>00</sub> and 32bD<sub>01</sub>. Because the control signal addsel(2) is set to subtract, the value output by adder/sub-

tractor block 928 is  $32\{(c+d)D_{00}-bD_{01}\}$  as shown in Figure 11. Similarly, with the values of control signals centermuxsel(2), andsel(3), muxsel(3), muxandsel(2)-, and addsel(3) given in Figure 10, the value output by adder/subtractor block 930 is  $32\{(a+b)D_{00} + cD_{01}\}$  as shown in Figure 11.

At time t=2, input data value x is data value  $D_{02}$ . The control signals andsel(1), muxsel(1), and muxandsel(1) are set so that the inputs to adder/subtractor block 926 are  $32aD_{02}$  and  $32\{(c+d)D_{00}-bD_{01}\}$ . The value  $32\{(c+d)D_{00}-bD_{01}\}$  was the previous output from adder/subtractor block 928. Because control signal addsel(1) is set to add as shown in Figure 10, the output of block 926 is  $32\{(c+d)D_{00}-bD_{01}+aD_{02}\}$  as shown in Figure 11. Similarly, with the value of control signals addsel(4), andsel(4) and muxandsel(3), the value output by adder/subtractor block 932 is  $32\{(a+b)D_{00} + cD_{01} - dD_{02}\}$  as shown in Figure 11.

As illustrated in Figure 10, output leads OUT2 (which are the output leads of delay element 940) carry a value of  $32H_{00}$  at time t=3. The value  $32\{(a+b)D_{00} + cD_{01} - dD_{02}\}$  is equal to  $32H_{00}$  because  $32H_{00}=32\{(a+b)D_{00} + cD_{01} - dD_{02}\}$  as set forth above. Similarly, output leads OUT1 (which are the output leads of delay element 934) carry a value of  $32G_{00}$  at t=3 because output leads of block 926 have a value of  $32\{(c+d)D_{00}-bD_{01}+aD_{02}\}$  one time period earlier. Because  $32H_{00}$  precedes  $32G_{00}$  in the data stream comprising the high and low pass components in a one-dimensional row convolution, delay element 606 is provided in the CONV\_ROW row convolver of Figure 6 to delay  $32G_{00}$  so that  $32G_{00}$  follows  $32H_{00}$  on the leads which are input to the multiplexer 608. Multiplexer 608 selects between the left and right inputs shown in Figure 6 as dictated by the value mux\_608, which is provided on one of the control leads 546 from control block 506. The signal mux\_608 is timed such that the value  $32H_{00}$  precedes the value  $32G_{00}$  on the output leads of multiplexer 608.

The output leads of multiplexer 608 are coupled to a variable shift register 610 as shown in Figure 6. The function of the variable shift register 610 is to normalize the data values output from the CONV\_ROW block by shifting the value output by multiplexer 608 to the right by m\_row bits. In this instance, for example, it is desirable to divide the value output of multiplexer 608 by 32 to produce the normalized values  $H_{00}$  and  $G_{00}$ . To accomplish this, the value m\_row provided by control block 506 via one of the control leads 546 is set to 5. The general rule followed by the control block 506 of the discrete wavelet transform circuit is to: (1) set m\_row equal to 5 to divide by 32 during the forward transform, (2) set m\_row equal to 4 to divide by 16 during the middle of a row during an inverse transform, and (3) set m\_row equal to 3 to divide by 8 when generating a start or end value of a row during the inverse transform. In the example being described, the start values of a transformed row during a forward transform are being generated, so m\_row is appropriately set equal to 5.

As illustrated in Figure 10, the centermuxsel(1) and centermuxsel(2) control signals alternate such that the values on the right and the left input leads of multiplexers 922 and 924 are passed to their respective output leads for each successive data value convolved. This reverses data flow through the adder/subtractor blocks 928 and 930 in alternating time periods. In time period t=0, for example, Figure 11 indicates that the value  $32aD_{01}$  in the column designated "Output of Block 926" in time period t=1 is added to  $32bD_{02}$  to form the value  $32\{aD_{01} + bD_{02}\}$  in the column designated "Output of Block 928" at time t=2. Then, in time period t=3, the value  $32\{dD_{01} + cD_{02}\}$  in the column designated "Output of Block 930" is added to  $32bD_{03}$  to form the value  $32\{dD_{01} + cD_{02} - bD_{03}\}$  in the column designated "Output of Block 928".

Accordingly, in time period t=2, the two values supplied to block 928 are  $32bD_{02}$  and the previous output from block 926,  $32bD_{01}$ . Because addsel(2) is set to add as shown in Figure 10, the value output by block 928 is  $32\{aD_{01} + bD_{02}\}$ .

Similarly, the output of block 930 is  $32\{dD_{01} + cD_{02}\}$ . In this way it can be seen the sequence of control signals in Figure 10 causes the circuit of Figure 9 to execute the data flow in Figure 11 to generate, after passage through multiplexer mux 608 and shift register 610 with m\_row set equal to 5, the low and high pass non-boundary components  $H_{01}$ ,  $G_{01}$ ,  $H_{02}$ , and  $G_{02}$ . To implement the end forward low and high pass filters beginning at t=7 when the last data value of the first row of Table 1,  $D_{07}$ , is input to the row convolver, the control signal muxsel(2) is set to 3, so that  $32(b-a)D_{07}$  is passed to block 928. Control signal muxsel(3) is set to 4, so that  $32(c-d)D_{07}$  is passed to block 930. Control signal addsel(2) is set to subtract and control signal addsel(3) is set to add. Accordingly, the output of adder/subtractor 928 is  $32\{dD_{06} + cD_{07} - (b-a)D_{07}\}$ . Similarly, the output of adder/subtractor 930 is  $32\{aD_{06} + bD_{07} + (c-d)D_{07}\}$ .

As shown in Figure 11, these values are output from blocks 926 and 932 at the next time period when t=8 by setting muxandsel(1) and muxandsel(3) to be both zero so that adder/subtractor blocks 926 and 932 simply pass the values unchanged. Delay elements 934 and 940 cause the values  $32G_{03}$  and  $32H_{03}$  to be output from output leads OUT1 and OUT2 at time t=9. Multiplexer 608, as shown in Figure 6, selects between the output of delay unit 606 and the OUT2 output as dictated by CONTROL block 506 of Figure 5. Shift register 610 then normalizes the output as described previously, with m\_row set equal to 5 for the end of the row. The resulting values  $G_{03}$  and  $H_{03}$  are the values output by the end low pass and end high pass forward transform digital filters in accordance with equations 26 and 28 of copending Patent Cooperation Treaty (PCT) application filed March

30, 1994, entitled "Data Compression and Decompression". Thus, a three coefficient start forward transform low pass filter and a three coefficient start forward transform high pass filter have generated the values  $H_{00}$  and  $G_{00}$ . A four coefficient quasi-Daubechies low pass forward transform filter and a four coefficient quasi-Daubechies high pass forward transform filter have generated the values  $H_{01} \dots G_{02}$ . A three coefficient end forward transform low pass filter and a three coefficient end forward transform high pass filter have generated the values  $H_{03}$  and  $G_{03}$ .

5 The same sequence is repeated for each of the rows of the matrix in Table 1. In this way, for each two data values input there is one high pass (G) data value generated and there is one low pass (H) data value generated. The resulting output data values of CONV\_ROW block 502 are shown in Figure 12.

10 As illustrated in Figure 5, the values output from row convolver CONV\_ROW block 502 are passed to the column convolver CONV\_COL block 504 in order to perform column convolution using the same filters in accordance with the method set forth in copending Patent Cooperation Treaty (PCT) application filed March 30, 1994, entitled "Data Compression and Decompression".

15 Figure 7 is a block diagram of the column convolver CONV\_COL block 504 of Figure 5. The CONV\_COL block 504 comprises a wavelet transform multiplier circuit 702, a column wavelet transform circuit 704, a multiplexer 708, and a variable shift register 710. In general, the overall operation of the circuit shown in Figure 7 is similar to the overall operation of the circuit shown in Figure 6. The wavelet transform multiplier circuit 702 of the column convolver is identical to the wavelet transform multiplier circuit 602 of Figure 6. The dashed line in Figure 8. Therefore, is designated with both reference numerals 602 and 702.

20 Figure 13 is a detailed block diagram of the column wavelet transform circuit 704 of Figure 7 of the column convolver. The CONV\_COL block 504, as shown in Figure 13, is similar to the CONV\_ROW block 502, except that the unitary delay elements 934, 936, 938, and 940 of the CONV\_ROW block 502 are replaced by "line delay" blocks 1334, 1336, 1338, and 1340, respectively. The line delay blocks represent a time delay of one row which, in the case of the matrix of the presently described example, is eight time units. In some embodiments in accordance with the present invention, the line delays are realized using random access memory (RAM).

25 To perform a column convolution on the values of the matrix of Figure 12, the first three values  $H_{00}$ ,  $H_{10}$ ,  $H_{20}$  of the first column are processed to generate, after a bit shift in shift register 710 of Figure 7, low and high pass values  $HH_{00}$  and  $HG_{00}$  of Figure 16. The first three values  $G_{00}$ ,  $G_{10}$ ,  $G_{20}$  of the second column of the matrix of Figure 12 are then processed to likewise produce  $GH_{00}$  and  $GG_{00}$ , and so on, to produce the top two rows of values of the matrix of Figure 16. Three values in each column are processed because the start low and high pass filters are three coefficient filters rather than four coefficient filters.

30 Figure 14 is a diagram illustrating control signals which control the column convolver during the forward transform of the data values of Figure 12. Figure 15 is a diagram illustrating data flow through the column convolver. Corresponding pairs of data values are output from line delays 1334 and 1340 of the column wavelet transform circuit 704. For this reason, the low pass filter output values are supplied from the output leads of the adder/subtractor block 1332 at the input leads of line delay 1340 rather than from the output leads of the line delay 1340 so that a single transformed data value is output from the column wavelet transform circuit in each time period. In Figure 14, output data values  $32HH_{00} \dots 32HH_{03}$  are output during time periods  $t=16$  to  $t=23$  whereas output data values  $32HG_{00} \dots 32HG_{03}$  are output during time periods  $t=24$  to  $t=31$ , one line delay later. After being passed through multiplexer 708 and variable shift register 710 of Figure 7, the column convolved data values  $HH_{00} \dots GH_{03}$  and  $HG_{00} \dots GG_{03}$  are written to memory unit 116 under the control of the address generator. After all the data values of Figure 16 are written to memory unit 116, an octave 0 sub-band decomposition exists in memory unit 116.

35 40 45 To perform the next octave of decomposition, only the low pass component HH values in memory unit 116 are processed. The HH values are read from memory unit 116 and passed through the CONV\_ROW block 502 and CONV\_COL block 504 as before, except that the control signals for control block 506 are modified to reflect the smaller matrix of data values being processed. The line delay in the CONV\_COL block 504 is also shortened to four time units because there are now only four low pass component HH values per row. The control signals to accomplish the octave 1 forward row transform on the data values in Figure 16 are shown in Figure 17. The corresponding data flow for the octave 1 forward row transform is shown in Figure 18. Likewise, the control signals to accomplish the octave 1 forward column transform are shown in Figure 19, and the corresponding data flow for the octave 1 forward column transform is shown in Figure 20.

50 55 The resulting HHHH, HHHG, HHGH, and HHGG data values output from the column convolver CONV\_COL block 504 are sent to memory unit 116 to overwrite only the locations in memory unit 116 storing corresponding HH data values as explained in connection with Figures 17 and 18 of copending Patent Cooperation Treaty (PCT) application filed March 30, 1994, entitled "Data Compression and Decompression". The result is an octave 1 sub-band decomposition stored in memory unit 116. This process can be performed on

large matrices of data values to generate sub-band decompositions having as many octaves as required. For ease of explanation and illustration, control inputs and dataflow diagrams are not shown for the presently described example for octaves higher than octave 1. However, control inputs and dataflows for octaves 2 and above can be constructed given the method described in copending Patent Cooperation Treaty (PCT) application filed March 30, 1994, entitled "Data Compression and Decompression" along with the octave 0 and octave 1 implementation of that method described above.

Figure 21 illustrates a block diagram of one possible embodiment of control block 506 of Figure 5. Control block 506 comprises a counter 2102 and a combinatorial logic block 2104. The control signals for the forward and inverse discrete wavelet transform operations, as shown in Figures 10, 14, 17, 19, 22, 24, 26, and 28, are output onto the output leads of the combinatorial logic block 2104. The input signals to the control block 506 comprise the sync leads 201 which are coupled to A/D video decoder 110, the direction lead 538 which is coupled to REGISTERS block 536, and the image size leads 540 and 542 which are also coupled to REGISTERS block 536. The values of the signals on the register leads 538, 540, and 542 are downloaded to REGISTERS block 536 of the video encoder/decoder chip 112 from data bus 106 via register download bus 128. The output leads of control block 506 comprise CONV\_ROW control leads 546, CONV\_COL control leads 548, DWT control leads 550, 552, and 554, memory control leads 2106 and 2108, DWT address generator muxcontrol lead 556, DWT address generator read control leads 534, and DWT address generator write control leads 544.

Counter block 2102 generates the signals row\_count, row\_carry, col\_count, col\_carry, octave, and channel, and provides these signals to combinatorial logic block 2104. Among other operations, counter 2102 generates the signals row\_count and row\_carry by counting the sequence of data values from 0 up to ximage, where ximage represents the horizontal dimension of the image received on leads 540. Similarly, counter 2102 generates the signals col\_count and col\_carry by counting the sequence of data values from 0 up to yimage, where yimage represents the vertical dimension of the image received on leads 542. The inputs to combinatorial logic block 2104 comprise the outputs of counter block 2102 as well as the inputs direction, ximage, yimage and sync to control block 506. The output control sequences of combinatorial logic block 2104 are combinatorially generated from the signals supplied to logic block 2104.

After the Y data values of an image have been transformed, the chrominance components U and V of the image are transformed. In the presently described specific embodiment of the present invention, a 4:1:1 format of Y:U:V values is used. Each of the U and V matrices of data values comprises half the number of rows and columns as does the Y matrix of data values. The wavelet transform of each of these components of chrominance is similar to the transformation of the Y data values except the line delays in the CONV\_COL are shorter to accommodate the shorter row length and the size of the matrices corresponding to the matrix of Table 1 is smaller.

Not only does the discrete wavelet transform circuit of Figure 5 transform image data values into a multi-octave sub-band decomposition using a forward discrete wavelet transformation, but the discrete wavelet transform circuit of Figure 5 can be used to perform a discrete inverse wavelet transform on transformed-image data to convert a sub-band decomposition back into the image domain. In one octave of an inverse discrete wavelet transform, the inverse column convolver 504 of Figure 5 operates on transformed-image data values read from memory unit 116 via leads 526, lines 528 and multiplexer mux2 512 and the inverse row convolver 502 operates on the data values output by the column convolver supplied via leads 524, lines 525 and multiplexer mux1 510.

Figures 22 and 23 show control signals and data flow for the column convolver 504 of Figure 5 when column convolver 504 performs an inverse octave 1 discrete wavelet transform on transformed-image data located in memory unit 116. As illustrated in Figure 23, the data value output from adder/subtractor block 1326 of Figure 13 at time t=4 is  $32((b-a)HHH_{00} + (c-d)HHG_{00})$ . The column convolver therefore processes the first two values  $HHH_{00}$  and  $HHG_{00}$  in accordance with the two coefficient start reconstruction filter (inverse transform filter) set forth in equation 52 of copending Patent Cooperation Treaty (PCT) application filed March 30, 1994, entitled "Data Compression and Decompression". Subsequently, blocks 1332 and 1326 output values indicating that the column convolver performs the four coefficient odd and even reconstruction filters (interleaved inverse transform filters) of equations 20 and 19 of copending Patent Cooperation Treaty (PCT) application filed March 30, 1994, entitled "Data Compression and Decompression". Fig. 23 illustrates that the column convolver performs the two coefficient end reconstruction filter (inverse transform filter) on the last two data values  $HHH_{10}$  and  $HHG_{10}$  (see time t=20) of the first column of transformed data values in accordance with equation 59 of copending Patent Cooperation Treaty (PCT) application filed March 30, 1994, entitled "Data Compression and Decompression". The data values output from the column convolver of Figure 13 are supplied to the row convolver 502 of Figure 5 via lines 525 and multiplexer mux1 510.

Figures 24 and 25 show control signals and data flow for the row convolver 502 of Figure 5 when the row convolver performs an inverse octave 1 discrete wavelet transform on the data values output from the column

convolver. The column convolver 504 has received transformed values  $HHH_{00} \dots HHG_{01}$ , and so forth as illustrated in Fig. 23 and generated the values  $HHH_{00} \dots HHG_{01}$  and so forth, as illustrated in Fig. 22, onto output leads 524. Row convolver 502 receives the values  $HHH_{00} \dots HHG_{01}$ , and so forth as illustrated in Fig. 24 and generates the values  $HH_{00}, HH_{01}, HH_{02}$  and so forth as illustrated in Fig. 24 onto output leads 520 of row convolver 502. The data flow of Fig. 25 indicates that the row convolver performs the start reconstruction filter on the first two data values of a row, performs the odd and even reconstruction filters on subsequent non-boundary data values, and performs the end reconstruction filter on the last two data values of a row. The HH data values output from row convolver 502 are written to memory unit 116 into the memory locations corresponding with the HH data values shown in Fig. 16.

10 To inverse transform the octave 0 data values in memory unit 116 into the image domain, the column convolver 504 and the row convolver 502 perform an inverse octave 0 discrete wavelet transform. Figures 26 and 27 show the control signals and the data flow for the column convolver 504 of Figure 5 when the column convolver performs an inverse octave 0 discrete wavelet transform on transformed image data values in memory unit 116. The data values output from the column convolver are then supplied to the row convolver 502 of Figure 15 5 via lines 528 and multiplexer mux1 510.

Figures 28 and 29 show control signals and data flow for the row convolver 502 of Figure 5 when the row convolver performs an inverse octave 0 discrete wavelet transform on the data output from the column convolver to inverse transform the transformed-image data back to the image domain. Column convolver 504 receives transformed values  $HH_{00} \dots GH_{03}$  and so forth as illustrated in Fig. 27 and generates the values  $H_{00} \dots G_{03}$  and so forth as illustrated in Fig. 26 onto output leads 524. Row convolver 502 receives the values  $H_{00} \dots G_{03}$  and so forth, as illustrated in Fig. 28, and generates the inverse transformed data values  $D_{00}, D_{01}, D_{02} \dots D_{07}$  and so forth, as illustrated in Fig. 28, onto output leads 520 of row convolver 502. The inverse transformed data values output from row convolver 502 are written to memory unit 114.

20 The control signals and the data flows of Figures 22, 23, 24, 25, 26, 27, 28 and 29 comprise the inverse transformation from octave 1 to octave 0 and from octave 0 back into image domain inverse transformed data values which are substantially the same as the original data values of the matrix Table 1. The control signals which control the row convolver and column convolver to perform the inverse transform are generated by control block 506. The addresses and control signals used to read data values from and write data values to memory units 116 and 114 are generated by the DWT address generator block 508 under the control of control block 506.

30 After the inverse wavelet transform of the Y matrix of transformed data values is completed, the U and V matrices of transformed data values are inverse transformed one after the other in a similar way to the way the Y matrix was inverse transformed.

Figure 30 is a block diagram of the DWT address generator block 508 of Figure 5. The DWT address generator block 508 supplies read and/or write addresses to the memory units 116 and 114 for each octave of the forward and inverse transform. The DWT address generator block 508 comprises a read address generator portion and a write address generator portion. The read address generator portion comprises multiplexer 3006, adder 3010, multiplexer 3002, and resettable delay element 3014. The write address generator portion likewise comprises multiplexer 3008, adder 3012, multiplexer 3004, and resettable delay element 3016. The DWT address generator is coupled to the control block 506 via control leads 534, 556, and 544, to memory unit 116 via address leads 3022, and to memory unit 114 via address leads 3020. The input leads of DWT address generator 508 comprise the DWT address generator read control leads 534, the DWT address generator write control leads 544, and the muxcontrol lead 534. The DWT address generator read control leads 534, in turn, comprise 6 leads which carry the values `col_end_R`, `channel_start_R`, `reset_R`, `oct_add_factor_R`, `incr_R`, `base_u_R`, and `base_v_R`. The DWT address generator write control leads 544, in turn, comprise leads which carry the values `col_end_W`, `channel_start_W`, `reset_W`, `oct_add_factor_W`, `incr_W`, `base_u_W`, and `base_v_W`. All signals contained on these leads are provided by control block 506. The output leads of DWT address generator block 508 comprise address leads 3022 which provide address information to memory unit 116, and address leads 3020 which provide address information to memory unit 114. The addresses provided on leads 3022 can be either read or write addresses, depending on the cycle of the DWT transform circuit 122 as dictated by control signal muxcontrol provided by control block 506 on lead 556. The addresses provided on leads 3020 are write-only addresses, because memory unit 114 is only written to by the DWT transform circuit 122.

55 Memory locations of a two-dimensional matrix of data values such as the matrices of Table 1, Figure 12 and Figure 16 may have memory location addresses designated 0, 1, 2 and so forth, the addresses increasing by one left to right across each row and increasing by one to skip from the right most memory location at the end of a row to the left most memory location of the next lower row. To address successive data values in a matrix of octave 0 data values, the address is incremented by one to read each new data value D from the

matrix.

For octave 1, addresses are incremented by two because the HH values are two columns apart as illustrated in Figure 16. The row number, however, is incremented by two rather than one because the HH values are located on every other row. The DWT address generator 508 in octave 1 therefore increments by two until the end of a row is reached. The DWT address generator then increments once by  $ximage + 2$  as can be seen from Figure 16. For example, the last HH value in row 0 of Figure 16 is  $HH_{00}$  at memory address 6 assuming  $HH_{00}$  has an address of 0 and that addresses increment by one from left to right, row by row, through the data values of the matrix. The next HH value is in row two,  $HH_{10}$ , at memory address 16. The increment factor in a row is therefore  $incr = 2^{octave}$ . The increment factor at the end of a row is  $oct\_add\_factor = (2^{octave} - 1) * ximage + 2^{octave}$  for  $octave \geq 0$ , where  $ximage$  is the x dimension of the image.

In some embodiments, the transformed Y data values are stored in memory unit 116 from addresses 0 through  $(ximage * yimage - 1)$ , where  $yimage$  is the y dimension of the matrix of the Y data values. The transformed U data values are then stored in memory unit 116 from address  $base\_u$  up to  $base\_v - 1$ , where:

$$base\_u = ximage * yimage$$

$$15 \quad base\_v = ximage * yimage + \frac{ximage * yimage}{4}$$

Similarly, the transformed V data values are stored in memory unit 116 at addresses beginning at address  $base\_v$ .

The operation of the read address generator portion in Figure 30 is representative of both the read and write portions. In operation, multiplexer base\_mux 3002 of Figure 30 sets the read base addresses to be 0 for the Y channel,  $base\_u\_R$  for the U channel, and  $base\_v\_R$  for the V channel. Multiplexer 3002 is controlled by the control signals  $channel\_start\_R$  which signifies when each Y, U, V channel starts. Multiplexer mux 3006 sets the increment factor to be  $incr\_R$ , or, at the end of each row, to  $oct\_add\_factor\_R$ . The opposite increment factor is supplied to adder 3010 which adds the increment factor to the current address present on the output leads of delay elements 3014 so as to generate the next read address,  $next\_addr\_R$ . The next read address  $next\_addr\_R$  is then stored in the delay element 3014.

In some embodiments in accordance with the present invention, tables of  $incr\_R$  and  $oct\_add\_factor\_R$  for each octave are downloaded to REGISTERS block 536 on the video encoder/decoder chip 112 at initialization via download registers bus 128. These tables are passed to the control block 508 at initialization. To clarify the illustration, the leads which connect REGISTERS block 536 to control block 506 are not included in Figure 5. In other embodiments, values of  $incr\_R$  and  $oct\_add\_factor\_R$  are precalculated in hardware from the value of  $ximage$  using a small number of gates located on-chip. Because the U and V matrices have half the number of columns as the Y matrix, the U and V jump tables are computed with  $ximage$  replaced by  $\frac{ximage}{2}$ , a one bit shift. Because the tree encoder/decoder restricts  $ximage$  to be a multiple of  $2^{(OCT + 1)} > 2^{octave}$ , the addition of  $2^{octave}$  in the  $oct\_add\_factor$  is, in fact, concatenation. Accordingly, only the factor  $(2^{octave} - 1) * ximage$  must be calculated and downloaded. The jump tables for the U and V addresses can be obtained from the Y addresses by shifting this factor one bit to the right and then concatenating with  $2^{octave}$ . Accordingly, appropriate data values of a matrix can be read from a memory storing the matrix and processed data values can be written back into the matrix in the memory to the appropriate memory locations.

Figures 31 and 32 are block diagrams of one embodiment of the tree processor/encoder-decoder circuit 124 of Figure 1. Figure 31 illustrates the circuit in encoder mode and Figure 32 illustrates the circuit in decoder mode. Tree processor/encoder-decoder circuit 124 comprises the following blocks: DECIDE block 3112, TP\_ADDR\_GEN block 3114, quantizer block 3116, MODE\_CONTROL block 3118, Huffman encoder-decoder block 3120, buffer block 3122, CONTROL\_COUNTER block 3124, delay element 3126, delay element 3128, and VALUE\_REGISTERS block 3130.

The tree processor/encoder-decoder circuit 124 is coupled to FIFO buffer 120 via input/output data leads 130. The tree processor/encoder-decoder circuit 124 is coupled to memory unit 116 via an old frame data bus 3102, a new frame data bus 3104, an address bus 3108, and memory control buses 3108 and 3110. The VALUE\_REGISTERS block 3130 of the tree processor/encoder-decoder circuit 124 is coupled to data bus 106 via a register download bus 128. Figures 31 and 32 illustrate the same physical hardware; the encoder and decoder configurations of the hardware are shown separately for clarity. Although two data buses 3104 and 3102 are illustrated separately in Figure 31 to facilitate understanding, the new and old frame data buses may actually share the same pins on video encoder/decoder chip 112 so that the new and old frame data are time multiplexed on the same leads 526 of memory unit 116 as illustrated in Figure 5. Control buses 3108 and 3110 of Figure 31 correspond with the control lines 2108 in Figure 5. The DWT address generator block 508 of the discrete wavelet transform circuit 122 and the tree processor address generator block 3114 of the tree processor/encoder-decoder circuit 124 access memory unit 116 therefore may use the same physical address, data and

control lines.

Figure 33 illustrates an embodiment of DECIDE block 3112. A function of DECIDE block 3112 is to receive a two-by-two block of data values from memory unit 116 for each of the old and new frames and from these two-by-two blocks of data values and from the signals on leads 3316, 3318, 3320 and 3322, to generate seven flags present on leads 3302, 3304, 3306, 3308, 3310, 3312 and 3314. The MODE\_CONTROL block 3118 uses these flags as well as values from VALUE\_REGISTERS block 3130 supplied via leads 3316, 3318 and 3320 to determine the mode in which the new two-by-two block will be encoded. The addresses in memory unit 116 at which the data values of the new and old two-by-two blocks are located and determined by the address generator TP\_ADDR\_GEN block 3114.

The input signal on register lead 3316 is the limit value output from VALUE\_REGISTERS block 3130. The input signal on register leads 3318 is the qstep value output from VALUE\_REGISTERS block 3130. The input signal on register lead 3320 is the compare value output from VALUE\_REGISTERS block 3130. The input signal on register lead 3322 is the octave value generated by TP\_ADDR\_GEN block 3114 as a function of the current location in the tree of the sub-band decomposition. As described in copending Patent Cooperation Treaty (PCT) application filed March 30, 1994, entitled "Data Compression and Decompression" at equations 62-71, the values of the flags new\_z, nz\_flag, origin, noflag, no\_z, oz\_flag, and motion, produced on leads 3302, 3304, 3306, 3308, 3310, 3312, and 3314, respectively, are determined in accordance with the following equations:

20

$$nz = \sum_{0 \leq x, y \leq 1} |new[x][y]| \quad (\text{equ. 1})$$

25

$$oz = \sum_{0 \leq x, y \leq 1} |old[x][y]| \quad (\text{equ. 2})$$

30

$$no = \sum_{0 \leq x, y \leq 1} |new[x][y] - old[x][y]| \quad (\text{equ. 3})$$

35

$$nz\_flag = nz < limit \quad (\text{equ. 4})$$

$$noflag = no < compare \quad (\text{equ. 5})$$

$$origin = nz \leq no \quad (\text{equ. 6})$$

$$motion = ((nz + oz) \ll octave) \leq no \quad (\text{equ. 7})$$

$$new_z = |new[x][y]| < qstep,$$

$$\text{for } 0 \leq x, y \leq 1 \quad (\text{equ. 8})$$

$$no_z = |new[x][y] - old[x][y]| < qstep,$$

$$\text{for } 0 \leq x, y \leq 1 \quad (\text{equ. 9})$$

$$oz\_flag = old[x][y] = 0,$$

$$\text{for all } 0 \leq x, y \leq 1 \quad (\text{equ. 10})$$

The DECIDE block 3112 comprises subtractor block 3324, absolute value (ABS) blocks 3326, 3328, and 3330, summation blocks 3332, 3334, and 3336, comparator blocks 3338, 3340, 3342, 3344, 3346, 3350, and 3352, adder block 3354, and shift register block 3356. The value output by ABS block 3326 is the absolute value of the data value new[x][y] on leads 3104. Similarly, the value output by ABS block 3328 is the absolute value of the data value old[x][y] on leads 3102. The value output by ABS block 3330 is the absolute value of the difference between the data values new[x][y] and old[x][y]. Comparator 3338, coupled to the output leads of ABS block 3326, unasserts new\_z flag on lead output 3302 if qstep is less than the value output by block 3326. Block 3332 sums the last four values output from block 3326 and the value output by block 3332 is supplied to comparator block 3340. Comparator block 3340 compares this value to the value of limit 3316. The flag nz\_flag 3304 is asserted on lead 3304 if limit is greater than or equal to the value output by block 3332. This value corresponds to nz\_flag in equation 4. Summation block 3334 similarly sums the four most recent values output by block 3328. The values outputs by blocks 3332 and 3334 are added together by block 3354, the values output by block 3354 being supplied to shift register block 3356. The shift register block 3356 shifts the value received to the left by octave bits. Summation block 3336 adds the four most recent values output by block 3330. Comparator block 3342 compares the value output by block 3332 to the value output by block

333E and asserts the motion flag in accordance with equation 7. The origin flag on output lead 3306 is asserted when the value output by block 3332 is less than the value output by 3336. This value corresponds to origin in equation 6 above. The value output by block 3336 is compared to the value compare by block 3344 such that flag noflag is asserted when compare is greater than the value output from block 3336. Block 3346 compares the value output by block 3330 to the value qstep such that flag no\_z is unasserted when qstep is less. This corresponds to flag no\_z in equation 9. The old input value on leads 3102 is compared to the value 0 by block 3350 such that flag oz\_flag on lead 3312 is asserted when each of the values of the old block is equal to 0. This corresponds to oz\_flag in equation 10 above. The seven flags produced by the DECIDE block of Figure 33 are passed to the MODE\_CONTROL block 3118 to determine the next mode.

The tree processor/encoder-decoder circuit 124 of Figure 31 comprises delay elements 3126 and 3128. Delay element 3126 is coupled to the NEW portion of memory unit 116 via new frame data bus 3104 to receive the value new[x][y]. Delay element 3128 is coupled to the OLD portion of memory unit 116 via old frame data bus 3102 to receive the value old[x][y]. These delay elements, which in some embodiments of the invention are implemented in static random access memory (SRAM), serve to delay their respective input values read from memory unit 116 for four cycles before the values are supplied to quantizer block 3116. This delay is needed because the DECIDE block 3112 introduces a four-cycle delay in the dataflow as a result needing to read the four most recent data values before the new mode in which those data values will be encoded is determined. The delay elements therefore synchronize signals supplied to quantizer block 3116 by the MODE\_CONTROL block 3118 with the values read from memory unit 116 which are supplied to quantizer block 3116.

The tree processor/encoder-decoder circuit 124 of Figures 31 and 32 comprises a VALUE\_REGISTERS block 3130. The VALUE\_REGISTERS block 3130 serves the function of receiving values from an external source and asserting these values onto leads 3316, 3318, 3320, 3132, 3134 and 3136, which are coupled to other blocks in the tree processor/encoder-decoder 124. In the presently described embodiment the external source is data bus 106 and VALUE\_REGISTERS block 3130 is coupled to data bus 106 via a download register bus 128. Register leads 3316 carry a signal corresponding to the value of limit and are coupled to DECIDE block 3112 and to MODE\_CONTROL block 3118. Register leads 3318 carry signals indicating the value of qstep and are coupled to DECIDE block 3112 and to MODE\_CONTROL block 3118. Register leads 3320 carry signals indicating the value of compare and are coupled to DECIDE block 3112 and to MODE\_CONTROL block 3118. Register leads 3132 carry signals indicating the value of ximage and are coupled to TP\_ADDR\_GEN block 3114 and to MODE\_CONTROL block 3118. Register leads 3134 carry signals indicating the value of yimage and are coupled to TP\_ADDR\_GEN block 3114 and to MODE\_CONTROL block 3118. Register lead 3136 carries a signal corresponding to the value of direction and is coupled to TP\_ADDR\_GEN block 3114, MODE\_CONTROL block 3118, buffer block 3122, Huffman encoder-decoder block 3120, and quantizer block 3116. To clarify the illustration, only selected ones of the connections between the VALUE\_REGISTERS block 3130 and other blocks of the tree processor/encoder-decoder circuit 124 are illustrated in Figures 31 and 32. VALUE\_REGISTERS block 3130 is, in some embodiments, a memory mapped register addressable from bus 106.

Figure 34 is a block diagram of an embodiment of address generator TP\_ADDR\_GEN block 3114 of Figure 32. The TP\_ADDR\_GEN block 3114 of Figure 34 generates addresses to access selected two-by-two blocks of data values in a tree of a sub-band decomposition using a counter circuit (see Figures 27-29 of copending Patent Cooperation Treaty (PCT) application filed March 30, 1994, entitled "Data Compression and Decompression" and the corresponding text). Figure 34 illustrates a three-octave counter circuit. The signals supplied to TP\_ADDR\_GEN block 3114 are provided by MODE\_CONTROL block 3118, CONTROL\_COUNTER block 3124, and VALUE\_REGISTER block 3130. MODE\_CONTROL block 3118 is coupled to TP\_ADDR\_GEN block 3114 by leads 3402 which carry the three bit value new\_mode. CONTROL\_COUNTER 3124 is coupled to TP\_ADDR\_GEN block 3114 by leads 3404 and 3406 which carry signals read\_enable and write\_enable, respectively. VALUE\_REGISTER block 3130 is coupled to TP\_ADDR\_GEN block 3114 by register leads 3132 which carry a signal indicating the value of ximage. The output leads of TP\_ADDR\_GEN block 3114 comprise tree processor address bus 3106 and octave leads 3322. The address generator TP\_ADDR\_GEN block 3114 comprises a series of separate counters: counter TreeRoot\_x 3410, counter TreeRoot\_y 3408, counter C3 3412, counter C2 3414, counter C1 3416, and counter sub\_count 3418. TP\_ADDR\_GEN block 3114 also comprises CONTROL\_ENABLE block 3420, multiplexer 3428, multiplexer 3430, NOR gate 3436, AND gates 3422, 3424 and 3426, AND gates 3428, 3430 and 3432, multiplier block 3432 and adder block 3434.

Counter TreeRoot\_x 3410 counts from 0 up to  $\frac{ximage}{2^{OCT+1}} - 1$  and counter TreeRoot\_y 3408 counts from 0 up to  $\frac{yimage}{2^{OCT+1}} - 1$ , where OCT is the maximum number of octaves in the decomposition. Counters C3, C2, C1, and sub\_count are each 2-bit counters which count from 0 up to 3, and then return to 0. Each of these counters

takes on its next value in response to a respective count enable control signal supplied by CONTROL\_ENABLE block 3420. Figure 34 shows count enable control signals  $x_{en}$ ,  $y_{en}$ ,  $c3_{en}$ ,  $c2_{en}$ ,  $c1_{en}$ , and  $sub\_en$ , being supplied to the counters TreeRoot\_x, TreeRoot\_y, C3, C2, C1 and  $sub\_count$ , respectively. When one of the counters reaches its maximum value, the counter asserts a carry out signal back to the CONTROL\_ENABLE block 3420. These carry out signals are denoted in Figure 34 as  $x\_carry$ ,  $y\_carry$ ,  $c3\_carry$ ,  $c2\_carry$ ,  $c1\_carry$ , and  $sub\_carry$ .

CONTROL\_ENABLE block 3420 responds to input signal  $new\_mode$  on leads 3402 and to the carry out signals to generate the counter enable signals. The octave signal output by CONTROL\_ENABLE is the value of the octave of the transform of the data values currently being addressed. The  $c1\_carry$ ,  $c2\_carry$ , and  $c3\_carry$  signals are logically ANDed with the  $write\_enable$  signal supplied from CONTROL\_COUNTER block 450 before entering the CONTROL\_ENABLE block 3420. This AND operation is performed by AND gates 3422, 3424, and 3426 as shown in Figure 34. The counter enable signals from CONTROL\_ENABLE block 3420 are logically ANDed with the signal resulting from the logical ORing of  $read\_enable$  and  $write\_enable$  by OR gate 3436. These ANDing operations are performed by AND gates 3428, 3430, and 3432 as shown in Figure 34. AND gates 3422, 3424, 3426, 3428, 3430, and 3432 function to gate the enable and carry signals with the  $read\_enable$  and  $write\_enable$  signals such that the address space is cycled through twice per state, once for reading and once for writing.

The CONTROL\_ENABLE block 3420 outputs the enable signals enabling selected counters to increment when the count value reaches 3 in the case of the 2-bit counters 3412, 3414, and 3418, or when the count value reaches  $\frac{x_{image}}{2^{Oct+1}} - 1$  in the case of TreeRoot\_x 3410, or when the count value reaches  $\frac{y_{image}}{2^{Oct+1}} - 1$  in the case of TreeRoot\_y 3408. The resulting x and y addresses of a two-by-two block of data values of a given octave in a matrix of data values are obtained from the signals output by the various counters as follows:

For octave = 0:

$$\begin{array}{llllll} 25 & x = \text{TreeRoot}_x & C3(2) & C2(2) & C1(2) & sub\_count(2) \quad (\text{equ. } 11) \\ & y = \text{TreeRoot}_y & C3(1) & C2(1) & C1(1) & sub\_count(1) \quad (\text{equ. } 12) \end{array}$$

For octave = 1:

$$\begin{array}{llllll} & x = \text{TreeRoot}_x & C3(2) & C2(2) & sub\_count(2) & 0 \quad (\text{equ. } 13) \\ & y = \text{TreeRoot}_y & C3(1) & C2(1) & sub\_count(1) & 0 \quad (\text{equ. } 14) \end{array}$$

30 For octave = 2:

$$\begin{array}{llllll} & x = \text{TreeRoot}_x & C3(2) & sub\_count(2) & 0 & 0 \quad (\text{equ. } 15) \\ & y = \text{TreeRoot}_y & C3(1) & sub\_count(1) & 0 & 0 \quad (\text{equ. } 16) \end{array}$$

Figure 34 and equations 11-16 illustrate how the x and y address component values are generated by multiplexers 3428 and 3430, respectively, depending on the value of octave. The (2) in equations 11-16 denotes the least significant bit of a 2-bit counter whereas the (1) denotes the most significant bit of a 2-bit counter. TreeRoot\_x and TreeRoot\_y are the multibit values output by counters 3410 and 3408, respectively. The output of multiplexer 3430 is supplied to multiplier 3432 so that the value output by multiplexer 3430 is multiplied by the value  $x_{image}$ . The value output by multiplier 3432 is added to the value output by multiplexer 3428 by adder block 3434 resulting in the actual address being output onto address bus 3106 and to memory unit 116.

40 Appendix A discloses one possible embodiment of CONTROL\_ENABLE block 3420 of a three octave address generator described in the hardware description language VHDL. An overview of the specific implementation given in this VHDL code is provided below. The CONTROL\_ENABLE block 3420 illustrated in Figure 34 and disclosed in Appendix A is a state machine which allows trees of a sub-band decomposition to be ascended or descended as required by the encoding or decoding method. The CONTROL\_ENABLE block 3420 generates enable signals such that the counters generate four addresses of a two-by-two block of data values at a location in a tree designated by MODE\_CONTROL block 3118. Instructions from the MODE\_CONTROL block 3118 are read via leads 3402 which carry the value  $new\_mode$ . Each state is visited for four consecutive cycles so that the four addresses of the block are output by enabling the appropriate counter C3 3412, C2 3414 or C1 3416. Once the appropriate counter reaches a count of 3, a carry out signal is sent back to CONTROL\_ENABLE block 3420 so that the next state is entered on the next cycle.

55 Figure 35 is a state table for the TP\_ADDR\_GEN block 3114 of Figure 34 when the TP\_ADDR\_GEN block 3114 traverses all the blocks of the tree illustrated in Figure 36. Figure 35 has rows, each of which represents the generation of four address values of a block of data values. The (0-3) designation in Figure 35 represents the four values output by a counter. The names of the states (i.e., up0, up1, down1) do not indicate movement up or down the blocks of a tree but rather correspond with state names present in the VHDL code of Appendix A. (In Appendix A, the states down1, down2 and down3 are all referred to as down1 to optimize the implementation.) The state up0 in the top row of Figure 35, for example, corresponds to addressing the values of two-by-two block located at the root of the tree of Figure 36. In the tree of Figure 36 there are three octaves. After

these four addresses of the two-by-two block at the root of the tree are generated, the tree may be ascended to octave 1 by entering the state up.

Figure 36 illustrates a complete traversal of all the data values of one tree of a 3-octave sub-band decomposition as well as the corresponding states of the CONTROL\_ENABLE block of Figure 35. One such tree exists for each of the "GH", "HG" and "GG" sub-bands of a sub-band decomposition.

First, before a tree of the sub-band decomposition is traversed, all low pass HHHHHH component values of the decomposition are addressed by setting counter sub\_count to output 00. Counter C3 3412 is incremented through its four values. Counter TreeRoot\_x is then incremented and counter C3 3412 is incremented through its four values again. This process is repeated until TreeRoot\_x reaches its maximum value. The process is then repeated with TreeRoot\_y being incremented. In this manner, all HHHHHH low pass components are accessed. Equations 15 and 16 are used to compute the addresses of the HHHHHH low pass component data values.

Next, the blocks of the "GH" subband of a tree given by TreeRoot\_x and TreeRoot\_y are addressed. This "GH" subband corresponds to the value sub\_count = 10 (sub\_count (1) = 1 and sub\_count (2) = 0). The up0 state shown in Figure 35 is used to generate the four addresses of the root block of the "GH" tree in accordance with equation 15. The up1 state shown in Figure 35 is then used such that addresses corresponding to equations 13 and 14 are computed to access the desired two-by-two block of data values in octave 1. The four two-by-two blocks in octave 0 are then accessed in accordance with equations 11 and 12. With TreeRoot\_x and TreeRoot\_y and sub\_count untouched, the states zz0, zz1, zz2 and zz3 are successively entered, four addresses being generated in each state. After each one of these four states is exited, the C2 counter 3414 is incremented by CONTROL\_ENABLE block 3420 via the c2\_en signal once in order to move to the next octave 0 block in that branch of the tree. After incrementing in state zz3 is completed, the left hand branch of the tree is exhausted. To move to the next two-by-two block, the C3 counter 3412 is incremented and the C2 counter 3414 is cycled through its four values to generate the four addresses of the next octave 1 block in state down1 in accordance with equations 13 and 14. In this way, the TP\_ADDR\_GEN block 3114 generates the appropriate addresses to traverse the tree in accordance with instructions received from MODE\_CONTROL block 3118. When the traversal of the "GH" sub-band tree is completed, the traversal of the sub-band decomposition moves to the corresponding tree of the next sub-band without changing the value of TreeRoot\_x and TreeRoot\_y. Accordingly, a "GH" "HG" and "GG" family of trees are traversed. After all the blocks of the three sub-band trees have been traversed, the TreeRoot\_x and TreeRoot\_y values are changed to move to another family of sub-band trees.

To move to the next family of sub-band trees, the counter TreeRoot\_x 3410 is incremented, and the C3 3412, C2 3414, C1 3416 counters are returned to 0. The process of traversing the new "GH" tree under the control of the MODE\_CONTROL block 3118 proceeds as before. Similarly, the corresponding "HG" and "GG" trees are traversed. After TreeRoot\_x 3410 reaches its final value, a whole row of tree families has been searched. The counter TreeRoot\_y 3408 is therefore incremented to move to the next row of tree families. This process may be continued until all of the trees in the decomposition have been processed.

The low pass component HHHHHH (when sub\_count = 00) does not have a tree decomposition. In accordance with the present embodiment of the present invention, all of the low pass component data values are read first as described above and are encoded before the tree encoder reads and encodes the three subbands. The address of the data values in the HHHHHH subband are obtained from the octave 3 x and y addresses with sub\_count = 00. Counters C3 3412, TreeRoot\_x 3410, and TreeRoot\_y 3408 run through their respective values. After the low pass component data values and all of the trees of all the sub-bands for the Y data values have been encoded, the tree traversal method repeats on the U and V data values.

Although all the blocks of the tree of Figure 36 are traversed in the above example of a tree traversal, the MODE\_CONTROL block 3118 may under certain conditions decide to cease processing data values of a particular branch and to move to the next branch of the tree as set forth in copending Patent Cooperation Treaty (PCT) application filed March 30, 1994, entitled "Data Compression and Decompression". This occurs, for example, when the value new\_mode output by the MODE\_CONTROL block 3118 indicates the mode STOP. In this case, the state machine of CONTROL\_ENABLE block 3420 will move to, depending on the current location in the tree, either the next branch, or, if the branch just completed is the last branch of the last tree, the next tree.

Figure 34 illustrates control signal inputs read\_enable and write\_enable being supplied to TP\_ADDR\_GEN block 3114. These enable signals are provided because the reading of the new/old blocks and the writing of the updated values to the old frame memory occur at different times. To avoid needing two address generators, the enable signals of the counters C3 3412, C2 3414, and C1 3416 are logically ANDed with the logical OR of the read\_enable and write\_enable signals. Similarly, the carryout signals of these counters are logically ANDed with the write\_enable signal. During time periods when the new/old blocks are read from memory, the

read\_enable signal is set high and the write\_enable signal is set low. This has the effect of generating the addresses of a two-by-two block, but disabling the change of state at the end of the block count. The counters therefore return to their original values they had the start of the block count so that the same sequence of four address values will be generated when the write\_enable signal is set high. This time, however, the carry out is enabled into the CONTROL\_ENABLE block 3420. The next state is therefore entered at the conclusion of the block count. In this manner, the address space is cycled through twice per state, once for reading and once for writing.

Figure 37 is a block diagram of one embodiment of quantizer block 3116 of Figure 31. As shown in Figure 31, quantizer block 3116 is coupled to MODE\_CONTROL block 3118, a Huffman encoder-decoder block 3120, delay block 3126, delay block 3128, and VALUE\_REGISTERS block 3130. Input lead 3702 carries the signal difference from MODE\_CONTROL block 3118 which determines whether a difference between the new frame and old frame is to be quantized or whether the new frame alone is to be quantized. Values new[x][y] and old[x][y] are supplied on lines 3704 and 3706, respectively, and represent values from memory unit 116 delayed by four clock cycles. Input leads 3708 and 3710 carry the values sign\_inv and qindex\_inv from the Huffman encoder-decoder block 3120, respectively. Register leads 3318 and 3136 carry signals corresponding to the values qstep and direction from VALUE\_REGISTERS block 3130, respectively.

During encoding, quantizer block 3116 performs quantization on the values new[x][y], as dictated by the signal difference and using the values old[x][y], and generates the output values qindex onto output leads 3712, sign onto output lead 3714, and a quantized and then inverse quantized value old[x][y] onto data bus 3102. The quantized and inverse quantized value old[x][y] is written back into memory unit 116.

During decoding, quantizer block 3116 performs inverse quantization on the values old[x][y], as dictated by the signals difference, sign\_inv, and qindex\_inv, and generates an inverse quantized value, old[x][y], which is supplied to the old portion of memory unit 116 via bus 3102. Lead 3136 carries the value direction supplied by the VALUE\_REGISTERS 3130.

The value direction controls whether the quantizer operates in the encoder mode or the decoder mode. Figure 37 illustrates that multiplexers 3716 and 3718 use the direction signal to pass signals corresponding to the appropriate mode (sign and qindex for encoder mode; sign\_inv and qindex\_inv for decoder mode). Multiplexer 3720 passes either the difference of the new and old data values or passes the new value depending on the value of the difference signal. Absolute value block ABS 3722 converts the value output by multiplexer 3720 to absolute value form and supplies the absolute value form value to block 3724. The output leads of multiplexer 3720 are also coupled to sign block 3726. Sign block 3726 generates a sign signal onto lead 3714 and to multiplexer 3716.

Block 3724 of the quantizer block 3116 is an human visual system (HVS) weighted quantizer having a threshold of qstep. The value on input leads 3728 denoted mag in Figure 37 is quantized via a modulo-qstep division (see Figures 30 and 31 of copending Patent Cooperation Treaty (PCT) application filed March 30, 1994, entitled "Data Compression and Decompression" and the corresponding text). The resulting quantized index value qindex is output onto leads 3712 to the Huffman encoder block 3120. Multiplexer 3716 receives the sign signal on leads 3714 from block 3726 and also the sign\_inv signal on lead 3708. Multiplexer 3716 passes the sign value in the encoder mode and passes the sign\_inv value in the decoder mode. Likewise, multiplexer 3718 has as two inputs, the qindex signal on leads 3712 and the qindex\_inv signal on leads 3710. Multiplexer 3718 passes the qindex value in the encoder mode and the qindex\_inv value in the decoder mode. Inverse quantizer block 3730 inverse quantizes the value output by multiplexer 3718 by the value qstep to generate the value qvalue. Block NEG 3732 reverses the sign of the value on the output lead of block 3730, denoted qvalue in Figure 37. Multiplexer 3734 chooses between the positive and negative versions of qvalue as determined by the signal output from multiplexer 3716.

In the encoder mode, if the difference signal is asserted, then output leads 3712 qindex carry the quantized magnitude of the difference between the new and old data values and the output leads 3736 of multiplexer 3734 carry the inverse quantization of this quantized magnitude of the difference between the new and old values. In the encoder mode, if the difference input is deasserted, then the output leads 3712 qindex carry only the quantized magnitude of the new data value and the value on leads 3736 is the inverse quantization of the quantized magnitude of the new data value.

Adder block 3738 adds the inverse quantized value on leads 3736 to the old[x][y] data value and supplies the result to multiplexer 3740. Accordingly, when the difference signal is asserted, the difference between the old inverse quantized value on leads 3706 and the inverse quantized value produced by inverse quantizer 3730 is determined by adding in block 3738 the opposite of the inverse quantized output of block 3730 to the old inverse quantized value. Multiplexer 3740 passes the output of adder block 3738 back into the OLD portion of memory unit 116 via bus 3102. If, on the other hand, the difference signal is not asserted, then multiplexer 3740 passes the value on leads 3736 to the OLD portion of memory unit 116 via bus 3102. Accordingly, a frame

of inverse quantized values of the most recently encoded frame is maintained in the old portion of memory unit 116 during encoding.

In accordance with one embodiment of the present invention, the value of qstep is chosen so that qstep =  $2^n$ , where  $0 \leq n \leq 7$ , so that quantizer block 3724 and inverse quantizer 3730 perform only shifts by n bits.

5 Block 3724 then becomes in VHDL, where >> denotes a shift to the left, and where mag denotes the value output by block 3722:

```
CASE n is
  WHEN 0 => qindex := mag;
  WHEN 1 => qindex := mag >> 1;
```

10

```
WHEN 7 => qindex := mag >> 7;
END CASE;
```

Similarly, block 3730 is described in VHDL as follows:

15

```
CASE n is
  WHEN 0 => qvalue := qindex;
  WHEN 1 => qvalue := (qindex << 1) & "0";
  WHEN 2 => qvalue := (qindex << 2) & "01";
```

20

```
WHEN 7 => qvalue := (qindex << 7) & "0111111";
```

where << denotes a shift to the right and where & denotes concatenation. The factor concatenated after the shift is  $2^{n-1}$ .

25

The tree processor/encoder-decoder circuit 124 of Figure 31 also includes a MODE\_CONTROL block 3118. In the encoder mode, MODE\_CONTROL block 3118 determines mode changes as set forth in copending Patent Cooperation Treaty (PCT) application filed March 30, 1994, entitled "Data Compression and Decompression" when trees of data values are traversed to compress the data values into a compressed data stream. In the decoder mode, MODE\_CONTROL block 3118 determines mode changes as set forth in copending Patent Cooperation Treaty (PCT) application filed March 30, 1994, entitled "Data Compression and Decompression" when trees of data values are recreated from an incoming compressed data stream of tokens and data values.

30

MODE\_CONTROL block 3118 receives signals from DECIDE block 3112, CONTROL\_COUNTER block 3124, TP\_ADDR\_GEN block 3114, and VALUE\_REGISTERS block 3130. MODE\_CONTROL block 3118 receives the seven flag values from DECIDE block 3112. The input from CONTROL\_COUNTER block 3124 is a four-bit state vector 3138 indicating the state of the CONTROL\_COUNTER block 3124. Four bits are needed because the CONTROL\_COUNTER block 3124 can be in one of nine states. The input from TP\_ADDR\_GEN block 3114 is the octave signal carried by leads 3322. The VALUE\_REGISTERS block 3130 supplies the values on leads 3316, 3318, 3320, 3132, 3134, and 3136 to MODE\_CONTROL block 3118. Additionally, in the decoder mode, buffer 3122 supplies token values which are not Huffman decoded onto leads 3202 and to the MODE\_CONTROL block 3118 as shown in Figure 32.

40

MODE\_CONTROL block 3118 outputs a value new\_mode which is supplied to TP\_ADDR\_GEN block 3114 via leads 3402 as well as a token length value T\_L which is supplied to buffer block 3122 via leads 3140. In the encoder mode, MODE\_CONTROL block 3118 also generates and supplies tokens to buffer block 3122 via leads 3202. Leads 3202 are therefore bidirectional to carry token values from MODE\_CONTROL block 3118 to buffer block 3122 in the forward mode, and to carry token values from buffer 3122 to MODE\_CONTROL block 3118 in the decoder mode. The token length value T\_L, on the other hand, is supplied by MODE\_CONTROL block 3118 to buffer block 3122 in both the encoder and decoder modes. MODE\_CONTROL block 3118 also generates the difference signal and supplies the difference signal to quantizer block 3116 via lead 3142. MODE\_CONTROL block 3118 asserts the difference signal when differences between new and old values are to be quantized and deasserts the difference signal when only new values are to be quantized. Appendix B is a VHDL description of an embodiment of the MODE\_CONTROL block 3118 in the VHDL language.

50

In the encoding process, the MODE\_CONTROL block 3118 initially assumes a mode, called pro\_mode, from the block immediately below the block presently being encoded in the present tree. For example, the blocks in Figure 36 corresponding to states zz0, ..., zz3 in the left-most branch inherit their respective pro\_modes from the left-most octave 1 block. Similarly, the left-most octave 1 block in Figure 36 inherits its pro\_mode from the root of the tree in octave 2. After the data values of the new and old blocks are read and after the DECIDE block 3112 has generated the flags for the new block as described above, the state machine of

5 MODE\_CONTROL block 3118 determines the new\_mode for the new block based on the new data values, the flags, and the pre-mode. The value of new\_mode, once determined, is then stored as the current mode of the present block in a mode latch. There is one mode latch for each octave of a tree and one for the low pass data values. The mode latches form a stack pointed to by octave so that the mode latches contain the mode in which each of the blocks of the tree was encoded.

10 The tree processor circuit of Figures 31 and 32 also comprises a Huffman encoder-decoder block 3120. In the encoder mode, inputs to the Huffman encoder-decoder block 3120 are supplied by quantizer block 3116. These inputs comprise the qindex value and the sign signal and are carried by leads 3712 and 3714, respectively. The outputs of Huffman encoder-decoder 3120 comprise the Huffman encoded value on leads 3142 and the Huffman length H\_L on leads 3144, both of which are supplied to buffer block 3122.

15 In the decoder mode, the input to the Huffman encoder-decoder block 3120 is the Huffman encoded value carried by leads 3204 from buffer block 3122. The outputs of the Huffman encoder-decoder 3120 comprise the Huffman length H\_L on leads 3144 and the sign\_inv and qindex\_inv values supplied to quantizer block 3116 via leads 3708 and 3710, respectively.

20 The Huffman encoder-decoder block 3120 implements the Huffman table shown in Table 2 using combinatorial logic.

qindex	Huffman code
-38 . . -512	1 1 0 0 0 0 0 0 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1
-22 . . -37	1 1 0 0 0 0 0 0 1 1 1 1 ( qindex  -22)
-7 . . -21	1 1 0 0 0 0 0 0 ( qindex  -7)
-6	1 1 0 0 0 0 0 1
.	.
.	.
.	.
-2	1 1 0 1
-1	1 1 1
0	0
1	1 0 1
2	1 0 0 1
.	.
.	.
.	.
6	1 0 0 0 0 0 0 1
7 . . 21	1 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 ( qindex  -7)
22 . . 37	1 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 1 1 1 1 ( qindex  -22)
38 . . 511	1 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1

50

Table 2

55 In the encoder mode, qindex values are converted into corresponding Huffman codes for incorporation into the compressed data stream. Tokens generated by the MODE\_CONTROL block 3118, on the other hand, are not encoded but rather are written directly into the compressed data stream.

Figure 38 illustrates one possible embodiment of buffer block 3122 of Figures 31 and 32. The function of buffer block 3122 in the encoder mode is to assemble encoded data values and tokens into a single serial compressed data stream. In the decoder mode, the function of buffer block 3122 is to deassemble a compressed

serial data stream into encoded data values and tokens. Complexity is introduced into buffer block 3122 due to the different lengths of different Huffman encoded data values. As illustrated in Figure 31, buffer 3122 is coupled to FIFO buffer 120 via input-output leads 130, to MODE\_CONTROL block 3118 via token value leads 3202 and token length leads 3140, to Huffman encoder-decoder 3120 via leads 3144 and Huffman length leads 3144, to CONTROL\_COUNTER 3124 via cycle select leads 3802, and to VALUE\_REGISTERS 3130 via leads 3136.

The direction signal carried on leads 3136 from VALUE\_REGISTERS block 3130 determines whether the buffer block 3122 operates in the encoder mode or in the decoder mode. In encoder mode, multiplexers 3804, 3806, 3808 and 3814 select the values corresponding to their "E" inputs in Figure 38. In the encoder mode, the buffer block 3122 processes the Huffman encoded value signal present on leads 3142, the token value signal present on leads 3202, the cycle select signal on leads 3802, the Huffman length signal H\_L on leads 3144, and the token length signal T\_L on leads 3140. The cycle select signal, supplied by CONTROL\_COUNTER block 3124 via leads 3802, is supplied to multiplexers 3810 and 3812 to control whether a Huffman encoded value (received from Huffman encoder-decoder block 3120) or whether a non-encoded token value (received from MODE\_CONTROL block 3118) is the value presently being assembled into the output data stream.

Figure 39 illustrates a simplified diagram of the buffer block 3122 of Figure 38 when configured in encoder mode. The value  $s_t$  is a running modulo sixteen sum of the input token length values and Huffman value length values. The circuit which determines  $s_t$  comprises adder block 3902, modulo sixteen divider block 3904, and delay block 3906. When the incoming length value added to the prior value  $s_t$  produces a length result of sixteen or greater, block 3904 subtracts sixteen from this length result to determine the new value of  $s_t$ . Comparator block 3908 also sends a signal high\_low to input lead 3916 of multiplexer 3901 indicating that  $s_t$  has exceeded sixteen. Figure 39 shows a barrel shifter 3912 receiving data input values from the output data leads of multiplexer 3901 and from the output data leads of multiplexer 3810. Barrel shifter 3912 sends a 32-bit output signal to a 32-bit buffer 3914. The lower 16-bit output of 32-bit buffer 3914 constitutes the encoded bit stream output of the video encoder/decoder chip which is output onto input/output leads 130.

When the prior value of  $s_t$  plus the incoming value length is sixteen or greater, then the lower sixteen bits of buffer 3914 are sent out to FIFO buffer 120 and multiplexer 3901 is set to pass the upper sixteen bits of buffer 3914 back into the lower sixteen bit positions in barrel shifter 3912. The value  $s_t$  is then decremented by sixteen. These passed back bits will next become some of the bits in the lower sixteen bits of buffer 3914, on which a subsequent incoming encoded value or token received from multiplier 3810 will be stacked by the barrel shifter starting at location  $S_t$  to make sixteen or more packed bits.

Alternatively, if the value of  $s_t$  plus the length of the new incoming value is less than sixteen, then multiplexer 3901 is controlled to pass the lower sixteen bits of buffer 3914 back to barrel shifter 3912 and no bits are applied to FIFO buffer 120. The bits of a subsequent incoming encoded value or taken from multiplexer 3810 will be stacked on top of the bits of prior encoded data values or tokens in barrel shifter 3912. Because the value  $S_t$  did not exceed sixteen,  $s_t$  is not decremented by sixteen.

Figure 40 illustrates a typical output of the barrel shifter 3912 of the buffer 3122 in encoder mode. The maximum length of a Huffman encoded word is sixteen bits. All tokens are two bits in length, where length is the number of bits in the new encoded value or token. The value  $s$  in Figure 40 indicates the bit position in the barrel shifter 3912 immediately following the last encoded data value or token present in the barrel shifter. Accordingly, a new encoded value or token is written into barrel shifter 3912 at positions  $s \dots s + \text{length}$ . The resulting 32-bit output of the barrel shifter is rewritten to the 32-bit buffer 3914. The comparator block compares the new value of  $s + \text{length}$  to sixteen. If this value  $s + \text{length}$  is sixteen or greater as illustrated in Figure 40, then the control signal high\_low on multiplexer input lead 3916 is asserted. The lower sixteen bits of the buffer are therefore already completely packed with either bits of data values and/or with bits of tokens. These lower sixteen bits are therefore output to comprise part of the output data stream. The upper sixteen bits, which are incompletely packed with data values and/or tokens, are sent back to the lower sixteen bit positions in the barrel shifter so that the remaining unpacked bits in the lower sixteen bits can be packed with new data bits or new token bits.

If, on the other hand, this value  $s + \text{length}$  is fifteen or less, then there remain unpacked bits in the lower sixteen bit positions in barrel shifter 3912. These lower bits in barrel shifter 3912 can therefore not yet be output via buffer 3914 onto lines 130. Only when  $s + \text{length}$  is sixteen or greater will the contents of barrel shifter 3912 be written to buffer 3914 so that the lower sixteen bits will be output via leads 130.

In the decoder mode, buffer 3122 receives an encoded data stream on leads 130, the token length signal T\_L on leads 3140 from MODE\_CONTROL block 3118, the Huffman encoded length signal H\_L on leads 3144, and the control signal cycle select on lead 3802. Multiplexers 3804, 3806, and 3808 are controlled to select values on their respective "D" inputs. Cycle select signal 3802 selects between the Huffman encoded length H\_L and the token length T\_L depending on whether a data value or a token is being extracted from the in-

coming data stream.

Figure 41 illustrates a simplified diagram of the buffer block 3122 configured in the decoder mode. The value  $s_i$  is a running modulo thirty-two sum of the input token length values and Huffman value length values. The circuit which determines the value of  $s_i$  comprises adder block 4002, modulo thirty-two divider block 4004, and delay block 4006. When the incoming length value added to  $s_i$  results in a value greater than thirty-two, modulo thirty-two divider block 4004 subtracts thirty-two from this value. A comparator block 4008 sends a signal to buffer 3914 indicating when  $s_i$  has reached a value greater than or equal to thirty-two. Additionally, comparator block 4008 sends a signal to both buffer 3914 and to multiplexers 3901 and 4010 indicating when  $s_i$  has reached a value greater than or equal to sixteen.

Buffer 3122 in the decoder mode also comprises buffer 3914, multiplexers 3901 and 4010, and barrel shifter 4012. In the case of a Huffman encoded data value being the next value in the incoming data stream, sixteen bits of the encoded data stream that are present in barrel shifter 4012 are passed via output leads 3204 to the Huffman decoder block 3120. The number of bits in the sixteen bits that represent an encoded data value depends on the data value itself in accordance with the Huffman code used. In the case of a token being the next value in the incoming data stream, only the two most significant bits from barrel shifter 4012 are used as the token value which is output onto leads 3202 to MODE\_CONTROL block 3118. The remaining fourteen bits are not output during this cycle. After a number of bits of either an encoded data value or a two-bit token is output, the value of  $s_i$  is updated to point directly to the first bit of the bits in barrel shifter 4012 which follows the bit last output. The circuit comprising adder block 4002, module block 4004, and delay element 4006 adds the length of the previously output value or token to  $s_i$  modulo thirty-two to determine the starting location of the next value or token in barrel shifter 4012. Comparator block 4008 evaluates the value of  $s_i$  plus the incoming length value, and transmits an active value on lead 4014 when this value is greater than or equal to sixteen and also transmits an active value on lead 4016 if this value is greater than or equal to thirty-two. When  $s_i$  is greater or equal to sixteen, the buffer 3914 will read in a new sixteen bits of encoded bit stream bits into its lower half. When  $s_i \geq 32$ , the buffer 3914 will read a new sixteen bits into its upper half. The two multiplexers 4010 and 3910 following the buffer 3914 rearrange the order of the low and high halves of the buffer 3914 to maintain at the input leads of barrel shifter 4012 the original order of the encoded data stream.

The tree processor/encoder-decoder circuit 124 of Figures 31 and 32 comprises a CONTROL\_COUNTER block 3124. CONTROL\_COUNTER block 3124 controls overall timing and sequencing of the other blocks of the tree processor/encoder/decoder circuit 124 by outputting the control signals that determine the timing of the operations that these blocks perform. In accordance with one embodiment of the present invention, the tree processor/encoder/decoder 112 is fully pipelined in a nine stage pipeline sequence, each stage occupying one clock cycle. Appendix C illustrates an embodiment of CONTROL\_COUNTER block 3124 described in VHDL code.

The signals output by CONTROL\_COUNTER block 3124 comprise a read\_enable signal on lead 3404, which is active during read cycles, and a write\_enable signal on lead 3406, which is active during write cycles. The signals output also comprise memory control signals on leads 3108 and 3110, which control the old and new portions of memory unit 116, respectively, for reading from memory or writing to memory. The signals output also comprise a 4-bit state vector on lead 3138, which supplies MODE\_CONTROL block 3118 with the current cycle. The four-bit state vector counts through values 1 through 4 during the "skip" cycle, the value 5 during the "token" cycle, and the values 6-9 during the "data" cycle. The signals output by CONTROL\_COUNTER block 3124 also comprise a cycle state value on leads 3802, which signals buffer 3122 when a token cycle or data cycle is taking place.

Figure 42 illustrates a pipelined encoding/decoding process controlled by CONTROL\_COUNTER block 3124. Cycles are divided into three types: data cycles - when Huffman encoded/decoded data is being output/input into the encoded bit stream and when old frame values are being written back to memory; token cycles - when a token is being output/input; and skip cycles - the remaining case when no encoded/decoded data is output to or received from the encoded bit stream. A counter in CONTROL\_COUNTER block 3124 counts up to 8 then resets to 0. At each sequence of the count, this counter decodes various control signals depending on the current MODE. The pipeline cycles are:

- 0) read old[0][0] and in encode new[0][0]; skip cycle.
- 1) read old[1][0] and in encode new[1][0]; skip cycle.
- 2) read old[0][1] and in encode new[0][1]; skip cycle.
- 3) read old[1][1] and in encode new[1][1]; skip cycle.

4) DECIDE blocks outputs flags MODE\_CONTROL write/read token into/from coded data stream:  
generates new\_mode, outputs tokens in encode;  
generates new\_mode, inputs tokens in decode;  
token cycle.

- 5) Huffman encode/decode qindex[0][0], and write old[0][0]; data cycle.
- 6) Huffman encode/decode qindex[1][0], and write old[1][0]; data cycle.
- 7) Huffman encode/decode qindex[0][1], and write old[0][1]; data cycle.
- 8) Huffman encode/decode qindex[1][1], and write old[1][1]; data cycle.

5      Figure 42 illustrates that once the new\_mode is calculated, another block of data values in the tree can be processed. The tree processor/encoder/decoder is thus fully pipelined, and can process four new transformed data values every five clock cycles. To change the pipeline sequence, it is only required that the control signals in the block CONTROL\_COUNTER block 3124 be reprogrammed.

10 **ADDITIONAL EMBODIMENTS**

In accordance with the above-described embodiments, digital video in 4:1:1 format is output from A/D video decoder 110 on lines 202 to the discrete wavelet transform circuit 122 of video encoder/decoder circuit 112 row by row in raster-scan form. Figure 43 illustrates another embodiment in accordance with the present invention. Analog video is supplied from video source 104 to an A/D video decoder circuit 4300. The A/D video decoder circuit 4300, which may, for example, be manufactured by Philips, outputs digital video in 4:2:2 format on lines 4301 to a horizontal decimeter circuit 4302. For each two data values input to the horizontal decimeter circuit 4302, the horizontal decimeter circuit 4302 performs low pass filtering and outputs one data value. The decimated and low pass filtered output of horizontal decimeter circuit 4302 is supplied to a memory unit 114 such that data values are written into and stored in memory unit 114 as illustrated in Figure 43. The digital video in 4:2:2 format on lines 4301 occurs at a frame rate of 30 frames per second, each frame consisting of two fields. By discarding the odd field, the full 33.3 ms frame period is available for transforming and compressing/decompressing the remaining even field. The even fields are low-pass filtered by the horizontal decimeter circuit 4302 such that the output of horizontal decimeter circuit 4302 occurs at a rate of 30 frames per second, each frame consisting of only one field. Memory unit 114 contains 840 x 240 total image data values. There are 320 x 240 Y data values, as well as 160 x 240 U data values, as well as 160 x 240 V data values.

In order to perform a forward transform, the Y values from memory unit 114 are read by video encoder/decoder chip 112 as described above and are processed by the row convolver and column convolver of the discrete wavelet transform circuit 122 such that a three octave sub-band decomposition of Y values is written into memory unit 116. The three octave sub-band decomposition for the Y values is illustrated in Figure 43 as being written into a Y portion 4303 of the new portion of memory unit 116.

After the three octave sub-band decomposition for the Y values has been written into memory unit 116, the video encoder/decoder chip 112 reads the U image data values from memory unit 114 but bypasses the row convolver. Accordingly, individual columns of U values in memory unit 114 are digitally filtered into low and high pass components by the column convolver. The high pass component G is discarded and the low pass component H is written into U portion 4304 of the new portion of memory unit 116 illustrated in Figure 43. After the U portion 4304 of memory unit 116 has been written with the low pass H component of the U values, video encoder/decoder chip 112 reads these U values from U portion 4304 and processes these U data values using both the row convolver and column convolver of the discrete wavelet transform circuit 122 to perform an additional two octaves of transform to generate a U value sub-band decomposition. The U value sub-band decomposition is stored in U portion 4304 of memory unit 116. Similarly, the V image data values in memory unit 114 are read by video encoder/decoder chip 112 into the column convolver of the discrete wavelet transform circuit 122, the high pass component G being discarded and the low pass component H being written into V portion 4305 of the new portion of memory unit 116. The V data values of V portion 4305 are then read by the video encoder/decoder chip 112 and processed by both the row convolver and the column convolver of discrete wavelet transform circuit 122 to generate a V sub-band decomposition corresponding to the U sub-band decomposition stored in U portion 4304. This process completes a forward three octave discrete wavelet transform comparable to the 4:1:1 three octave discrete wavelet transform described above in connection with Figures 3A-3C. Y portion 4303 of memory unit 116 comprises 320 x 240 data value memory locations; U portion 4304 comprises 160 x 120 data value memory locations; and V portion 4305 comprises 160 x 120 data value memory locations.

The DWT address generator 508 illustrated in Figure 5 generates a sequence of 19-bit addresses on output lines OUT2. In accordance with the presently described embodiment, however, memory unit 114 is a dynamic random access memory (DRAM). This memory unit 114 is loaded from horizontal decimeter circuit 4302 and is either read from and written to by the video encoder/decoder chip 112. For example, in order for the video encoder/decoder chip 112 to access the Y data values in memory unit 114 the inc\_R value supplied to DWT address generator 508 by control block 506 is set to 2. This causes the DWT address generator 508 of the video encoder/decoder chip 112 to increment through even addresses as illustrated in Figure 43 such that only

the Y values in memory unit 114 are read. After all the Y values are read from memory unit 114 and are transformed into a Y sub-band decomposition, then base\_u\_R is changed to 1 and the Channel\_start\_r is set so that BASE\_MUX 3002 of Figure 30 selects the base\_u\_R to address the first U data value in memory unit 114. Subsequent U data values are accessed because the inc\_R value is set to 4 such that only U data values in memory unit 114 are accessed. Similarly, the V data values are accessed by setting the base\_v\_R value to 3 and setting the Channel\_start\_r value such that BASE\_MUX 3002 selects the base\_v\_R input leads. Successive V data values are read from memory unit 114 because the inc\_R remains at 3.

Because in accordance with this embodiment the video encoder/decoder chip 112 reads memory unit 114, the DWT address generator 508 supplies both read addresses and write addresses to memory unit 114. The read address bus 3018 and the write address bus 3020 of Figure 30 are therefore multiplexed together (not shown) to supply the addresses on the OUT2 output lines of the DWT address generator.

To perform the inverse transform on a three octave sub-band decomposition stored in memory unit 116 of Figure 43, the row and column convolvers of the video encoder/decoder chip 112 require both low and high pass components to perform the inverse transform. When performing the octave 0 inverse transform on the U and V data values of the sub-band decomposition, zeros are inserted when the video encoder/decoder chip 112 is to read high pass transformed data values. In the octave 0 inverse transform, the row convolver is bypassed such that the output of the column convolver is written directly to the appropriate locations in the memory unit 114 for the U and V inverse transform data values. When the Y transform data values in memory unit 116 are to be inverse transformed, on the other hand, both the column convolver and the row convolver of the video encoder/decoder chip 112 are used on each of the three octaves of the inverse transform. The resulting inverse transformed Y data values are written into memory unit 114 in the appropriate locations as indicated in Figure 43.

Figure 44 illustrates a sequence of reading and writing Y data values from the Y portion of the new portion of memory unit 116 in accordance with the embodiment of the present invention illustrated in Figure 1 where memory unit 116 is a static random access memory (SRAM). The dots in Figure 44 represent individual memory locations in a two-dimensional matrix of memory locations adequately wide and deep to store an entire sub-band decomposition of the Y values in a single two-dimensional matrix. The discrete wavelet transform chip 122 reads the memory location indicated R0 during a first time period, outputs a transformed data value during a second time period to the memory location indicated W1, reads another data value from the memory location denoted R2, writes a transformed data value to the memory location denoted W3 and so forth. If memory unit 116 is realized as a dynamic random access memory (DRAM), addressing memory unit 116 in this manner results in a different row of the memory unit being accessed each successive time period. When successive accesses are made to different rows of standard dynamic random access memory, a row address select (RAS) cycle must be performed each time the row address changes. On the other hand, if successive accesses are performed on memory locations that fall in the same row, then only column address select (CAS) cycles need to be performed. Performing a CAS cycle is significantly faster in a standard dynamic random access memory than a RAS cycle. Accordingly, when memory unit 114 is realized as a dynamic random access memory and when memory unit 116 is read and written in the fashion illustrated in Figure 44, memory accesses are slow.

Figure 45 illustrates a sequence of reading and writing memory unit 116 in accordance with another embodiment of the present invention wherein memory unit 116 is realized as a dynamic random access memory. Again, the dots denote individual memory locations and the matrix of memory locations is assumed to be wide enough and deep enough to accommodate the Y portion of the sub-band decomposition in a single two-dimensional matrix. In the first time period, the memory location designated R0 is read. In the next time period, the memory location R1 is read, then R2 is read in a subsequent time period, then R3 is read in a subsequent period, and so forth. In this way one row of low pass component HH values is read into the video encoder/decoder chip 112 using only one RAS cycle and multiple CAS cycles. Then, a second row of low pass component HH data values is read as designated in Figure 45 by numerals R160, R161, R162 and so forth. The last low pass component data value to be read in the second row is designated R319. This row is also read into the video encoder/decoder chip 112 using only one RAS cycle and multiple CAS cycles. Figure 15 illustrates that after reading the data values that the resulting octave 1 transformed data values determined by the discrete wavelet transform chip 122 are now present in the line delays designated 1334 and 1340 illustrated in Figure 13. At this point in this embodiment of the present invention, the row convolver and the column convolver of the discrete wavelet transform chip 122 are stopped by freezing all the control signals except that line delays 1334 and 1340 are read in sequential fashion and written to the Y portion of the new portion of memory unit 116 as illustrated in Figure 45. In this fashion, two rows of memory locations which were previously read in time periods 0 through 319 are now overwritten with the resulting octave 1 transformed values in periods 320 through 639. Only one RAS cycle is required to write the transformed data values in time periods 320 through 479. Similarly, only one RAS cycle is required to write transformed data values during time periods 480 through

639. This results in significantly faster accessing of memory unit 116. Because dynamic random access memory can be used to realize memory unit 116 rather than static random access memory, system cost is reduced considerably.

In accordance with this embodiment of the present invention, the output of the output OUT2 of the column convolver of the video encoder/decoder circuit 112 is coupled to the output leads of block 1332 as illustrated in Figure 13. However, in the forward or inverse transform of any other octave, the output leads OUT2 are coupled to the line delay 1340. Accordingly, in an embodiment in accordance with the memory accessing scheme illustrated in Figure 45, a multiplexer (not shown) is provided to couple either the output of line delay 1340 or the output of adder block 1332 to the output leads OUT2 of the column wavelet transform circuit 704 of Figure 13.

Figure 46 illustrates another embodiment in accordance with the present invention. Memory unit 116 contains a new portion and an old portion. Each of the new and old portions contains a sub-band decomposition. Due to the spatial locality of the wavelet sub-band decomposition, each two-by-two block of low pass component data values has a high pass component consisting of three trees of high frequency two-by-two blocks of data values. For example, in a three octave sub-band decomposition, each two-by-two block of low pass component data values and its associated three trees of high pass component data values forms a 16-by-16 area of memory which is illustrated in Figure 46.

In order for memory unit 116 to be realized in dynamic random access memory (DRAM), the static random access memories (SRAMs) 4600, 4601, 4602 and 4603 which are used as line delays in the discrete wavelet transform circuit 122 are used as cache memory to hold one 16-by-16 block in the new portion of memory unit 116 as well as one 16-by-16 block in the old portion of memory unit 116. This allows each 16-by-16 block of dynamic random access memory realizing the new and old portions of memory unit 116 to be accessed using at most sixteen RAS cycles. This allows the video encoder/decoder chip 112 to use dynamic random access memory for memory unit 116 rather than static random access memory, thereby reducing system cost.

Figure 47 illustrates a time line of a sequence of operations performed by the circuit illustrated in Figure 46. In a first time period, old 16-by-16 block 3 is read into SRAM 1 4601. Because there is only one set of data pins on video encoder/decoder chip 112 for accessing memory unit 116, the 16-by-16 block 0 of the new portion of memory unit 116 is read into SRAM 0 4600 in the second time period. Bidirectional multiplexer 4604 is controlled by select inputs 4605 to couple the 16-by-16 block of old data values now present in SRAM 1 4601 to the bidirectional input port old 4606 of the tree processor/encoder/decoder circuit 124. Similarly, the 16-by-16 new data values present in SRAM 0 4600 are coupled to the input port new 4607 of the tree processor/encoder/decoder circuit 124. Accordingly, the tree processor/encoder/decoder circuit 124 performs tree processing and encoding in a third time period. During the same third time period, the inverse quantized old 16-by-16 block is rewritten into SRAM 1 4601 through multiplexer 4604. In a fourth time period, old 16-by-16 block 2 is read into SRAM 2 4602. Subsequently, in the fifth time period a 16-by-16 block of new data values is read from memory unit 116 into SRAM 0 4600. The new and old 16-by-16 blocks are again provided to the tree processor/encoder/decoder for processing, the inverse quantized 16-by-16 old block being written into SRAM 2 4602. During the period of time when the tree processor/encoder/decoder circuit 124 is performing tree processing and encoding, the inverse quantized 16-by-16 block in SRAM 1 4601 is written back to 16-by-16 block 3 of the old portion of memory unit 116. Subsequently, in the seventh time period, 16-by-16 block 5 of the old portion of memory unit 116 is read into SRAM 1 4601 and in the eighth time period the 16-by-16 block of new data values 4 in memory unit 116 is read into SRAM 0 4600. In the ninth time period, tree processor/encoder/decoder circuit 124 processes the 16-by-16 new and old blocks 4 and 5 while the 16-by-16 block of inverse quantized data values in SRAM 2 4602 is written to 16-by-16 block 2 in the old portion of memory unit 116. This pipelining technique allows the dynamic random access memory (DRAM) to be accessed during each time period by taking advantage of the time period when the tree processor/encoder/decoder circuit 124 is processing and not reading from memory unit 116. Because all accesses of memory unit 116 are directed to 16-by-16 blocks of memory locations, the number of CAS cycles is maximized. Arrows are provided in Figure 46 between memory unit 116 and video encoder/decoder circuit 112 to illustrate the accessing of various 16-by-16 blocks of the new and old sub-band decompositions during different time periods. However, because video encoder/decoder chip 112 only has one set of data leads through which data values can be read from and written to memory unit 116, the input/output ports on the right sides of dual port static random access memories 4600-4602 are bussed together and coupled to the input/output data pins of the video encoder/decoder chip 112.

In order to avoid the necessity of providing an additional memory to realize first-in-first-out (FIFO) memory 120, SRAM 3 4603, which is used as a line delay in the column convolver of the video encoder/decoder chip 112, is coupled to the tree processor/encoder/decoder circuit 124 to buffer the compressed data stream for encoding and decoding operations between the ISA bus 106 and the video encoder/decoder chip 112. This

sharing of SRAM 3 is possible because the discrete wavelet transform circuit 122 operates in a first time period and the tree processor/encoder-decoder circuit 124 operates in a second time period.

When the tree processor/encoder-decoder circuit 124 is performing the decoding function, the new portion of memory unit 116 is not required and SRAM 0 is unused. The read 0, read 1, and read 4 time periods of the time line illustrated in Figure 47 are therefore omitted during decoding.

Although the present invention has been described by way of the above described specific embodiments, the invention is not limited thereto. Adaptations, modifications, rearrangements and combinations of various features of the specific embodiments may be practiced without departing from the scope of the invention. For example, an integrated circuit chip may be realized which performs compression but not decompression and another integrated circuit chip may be realized which performs decompression but not compression. Any level of integration may be practiced including placing memory units on the same chip with a discrete wavelet transform circuit and a tree processor/encoder-decoder circuit. The invention may be incorporated into consumer items including personal computers, video cassette recorders (VCRs), video cameras, televisions, compact disc (CD) players and/or recorders, and digital tape equipment. The invention may process still image data, video data and/or audio data. Filters other than four coefficient quasi-Daubechies forward transform filters and corresponding four coefficient reconstruction (inverse transform) filters may be used including filters disclosed in copending Patent Cooperation Treaty (PCT) application filed March 30, 1994, entitled "Data Compression and Decompression". Various start and end forward transform filters and various corresponding start and end reconstruction (inverse transform) filters may also be used including filters disclosed in copending Patent Cooperation Treaty (PCT) application filed March 30, 1994, entitled "Data Compression and Decompression". Tokens may be encoded or unencoded. Other types of tokens for encoding other information including motion in consecutive video frames may be used. Other types of encoding other than Huffman encoding may be used and different quantization schemes may be employed. The above description of the preferred embodiments is therefore presented merely for illustrative instructional purposes and is not intended to limit the scope of the invention as set forth in the appended claims.

30

35

40

45

50

55

5

10

15

20

25

30

35

45

55

```

APPENDIX A: VHDL Language Implementation of CONTROL_ENABLE Block 3420
-----
--The state machine to control the address counters#
--works for 3 octave decomposition in Y & 2 in u|vf

use work.DFT_TYPES.all;
use work.dft_package.all;

entity U_CONTROL_ENABLE is

port(
    ck : in bit ;
    reset : in t_reset ;
    new_channel,channel , in t_channel ,
    c_blk : in BIT_VECTOR(1 to 3) ,
    subband : in BIT_VECTOR(1 to 2) ,
    load_channel : in t_load ,
    new_mode : in t_mode ,
    out_1 : out BIT_VECTOR(1 to 3),
    out_2 : out t_octave,
    out_3 : out bit,
    out_4 : out bit,
    out_5 : out t_state) ;

end U_CONTROL_ENABLE;

architecture behave OF U_CONTROL_ENABLE IS
signal state:t_state;
signal new_state_slgit_state;
BEGIN

state_machine:PROCESS(reset,new_channel,channel,c_blk,subband,load_channel,new_mode,state,new_state_sig)
VARIABLE en_blk:BIT_VECTOR(1 to 3) := B"000";
--enable blk_count#
```

5

10

15

20

25

35

45

50

55

```

variable lpf_block_done:bit := '0';
--enable x_count for LPF#
variable x_count :> tree_done:bit := '0';
--enable x_count for other subbands#
variable reset_state:t_state;
variable new_state:t_state;
variable octave:t_octave := 0;
--current octave#
variable start_state:t_state;
variable dummy_signals for DFI

BEGIN
  -- default initial conditions
  en_blk:=b"000";
  lpf_block_done:='0';
  tree_done:='0';
  octave:= 0;
  reset_state:=up0;
  new_state:=state;
  start_state:=up0;
--set up initial state thro mux on reset, on HH stay in zr0 state#
CASE channel IS
WHEN
CASE reset IS
WHEN rst => reset_state:= start_state;
WHEN OTHERS => reset_state := state;
END CASE;

CASE reset_state IS
WHEN up0 => octave :=2;
WHEN
CASE c_blk(3) IS
WHEN '1' => CRSL subband IS
WHEN B"00" => lpf_block_done := '1';

--clock x_count for LPF y channel#

```

```

      5
      10
      15
      20
      25
      30
      35
      40
      45
      50

--change state when count done!
      WHEN          OTHERS => new_state := up1;
      END CASE;

--in luminance & done with that treef
      CASE new_mode IS
        WHEN stop => tree_done := '1';
        WHEN OTHERS => null;
        END CASE;
        OTHERS => null;

      WHEN          END CASE;
      WHEN up1 => octave :=1;
      en_blk(2):= '1';
      CASE c_blk(2) IS
        WHEN _1. => new_state := zz0;
      END CASE;

--in luminance, terminate branch & move to next branch#
      CASE new_mode IS
        WHEN stop => new_state := down1;
        WHEN en_blk(3):= '1';
        WHEN OTHERS => null;
        END CASE;
        OTHERS => null;

      WHEN          END CASE;
      WHEN zz0 => octave :=0;
      en_blk(1):= '1';
      CASE c_blk(1) IS
        WHEN _1. => new_state := zz1;
        WHEN OTHERS => null;
        END CASE;
      WHEN zz1 => octave :=0;
      en_blk(1):= '1';
      CASE c_blk(1) IS
        WHEN _1. => new_state := zz2;
        WHEN OTHERS => null;
      END CASE;
    END CASE;
  END CASE;
END CASE;

```

```

5
10
15
20
25
30
35
40
45
50
55

WHEN zz2 =>
  END CASE;
  octave :=0;
  en_blk(1):= '1';
CASE c_blk(1) IS
  WHEN '1' => new_state := zz3;
    en_blk(2):= '1';
    OTHERS => null;
  END CASE;
WHEN zz3 => octave :=0;
  en_blk(1):= '1';
-- now decide the next state, on block(1) carry check the other block carries
--nowdecide the next state, on block(1) carry check the other block carries
--nowdecide the next state, on block(1) carry check the other block carries
--nowdecide the next state, on block(1) carry check the other block carries
CASE c_blk(1) IS
  WHEN '1' => new_state := down1;
    en_blk(2):= '1';
-- roll over to 0/
  en_blk(3):= '1' ;
--because state zz3 clock 1 pulse#
--because state zz3 clock 1 pulse#
WHEN OTHERS => null;
END CASE;

WHEN down1 => octave :=1;
  en_blk(2):= '1';
CASE c_blk(2) IS
  WHEN '1' => CASE subband IS
    WHEN "00" => lpf_block_done := '1' ;
    WHEN OTHERS => new_state := zz0 ;
  END CASE;
--clock x_count for LPP u|v channel#
--change state when count done#
CASE new_mode IS
  WHEN stop => CASB channel IS
    WHEN u|v => tree_done := '1';
--stop so finish thisbranch & move on#

```

```

5
10
15
20
25
30
35
40
45
50
55
--move to next tree#
      WHEN Y => en_blk(3) := '1';
      CASE c_blk(3) IS
        WHEN '1' => tree_done := '1';
        WHEN OTHERS => new_state := down1;
      END CASE;

      WHEN OTHERS => null;
      END CASE;

      WHEN OTHERS => null;
      END CASE;

      WHEN OTHERS => null;
      END CASE;

END CASE;

CASE channel IS
  WHEN u:v => IF c_blk(1)='1' AND c_blk(2)='1' THEN tree_done := '1';
    ELSE null;
  END IF;

  WHEN y => IF c_blk(1)='1' AND c_blk(2)='1' AND c_blk(3)='1' THEN
    tree_done := '1';
  ELSE null;
  END IF;

END CASE;

--now change to start state if the sequence has finished#
CASE tree_done IS
--in LPR state doesn't change when block done#
  WHEN '1' => new_state := start_state;
  WHEN OTHERS => null;
END CASE;

--on channel change, use starting state for new channel#
CASE load_channel IS
--in LPR state doesn't change when block done#
  WHEN write => CASE new_channel IS

```

5  
10  
15  
20  
25  
30  
35  
40  
45  
50  
55

```

WHEN Y => new_state:= up0;
WHEN u:v => new_state:=down1;
END CASE;
OTHERS => null;

new_state_sig<-new_state;

out_1 <= en_blk;
out_2 <= octave;
out_3 <= tree_done;
out_4 <= lpf_block_done;
out_5 <= reset_state;

END PROCESS;

DF1(ck,new_state_sig,state);
END behave;

CONFIGURATION CONTROL_ENABLE_CON OF U_CONTROL_ENABLE is
FOR behave
END FOR;
END CONTROL_ENABLE_CON;

```

5

10

15

20

25

30

35

45

50

55

## APPENDIX B: VHDL Language Implementation of MODE\_CONTROL Block J116

--generates the new\_mode from the old, and outputs control signals to the tokeniser--

```
use work.DWT_TYPRS.all;
use work.dff_package.all;
```

```
entity U_MODE_CONTROL IS
PORT(
    ck : in bit ;
    reset : in t_reset ;
    Intra_Inter : in t_intra ;
    lpe_done : in bit ;
    flags : in BIT_VECTOR(1 to 7) ;
    token_in : in BIT_VECTOR(1 to 2) ;
    octave : in t_octave ;
    state : in t_state ;
    direction : in t_direction ;
    load_mode_in : in t_load ;
    cycle: in t_cycle ;

    out_1:out t_mode;
    out_2:out t_mode;
    out_3:out BIT_VECTOR(1 to 2) ;
    out_4:out t_diff;
    out_5:out BIT_VECTOR(1 to 2) ;
    out_6:out t_mode);
```

```
end U_MODE_CONTROL;
```

```
architecture behave of U_MODE_CONTROL is
```

5

10

15

20

25

30

35

45

50

55

```
--new_mode,proposed mode,current token,difference,taken_length, --
signal nzflag:bit;
signal origin:bit;
signal noflag:bit;
signal ozflag:bit;
signal motion:bit;
signal pro_new_z:bit;
signal pro_no_z:bit;
signal lpf_done:bit;
signal load_mode:t_load_vec(1 to 4);
signal load_next:t_load;
signal pre_mode_sigt_mode;
signal pro_mode_sigt_mode;
signal new_mode_sigt_mode;
signal mode:t_mode;
signal diff_sigt_diff;
signal diff_out:t_diff;
signal mode_regs:t_mode_vec(1 to 4);
BEGIN

nzflag <= flags(1);
origin <= flags(2);
noflag <= flags(3);
ozflag <= flags(4);
motion <= flags(5);
pro_new_z <= flags(6);
pro_no_z <= flags(7);

DP1(ck,lpf_done,lpf_done_del); --Synchronise mode change at end of LPP--

--the proposed value for the mode at that octave, flags etc will change this value as necessary--
--proposed, or inherited mode from previous tree--

MODE_CONTROL:PROCESS( nzflag,origin,noflag,ozflag,motion,pro_new_z,pro_no_z,lpf_done_del,taken_in,direction,
mode_regs,state,reset,intra_intar/octave)
variable pro_mode:t_mode;
```

5  
10  
15  
20  
25  
30  
35  
40  
45  
50  
55

```

variable    new_mode :t_mode;
variable    token_out :bit_vector(1 to 2);
variable    difference :t_diff;
variable    token_length :bit_vector(1 to 2);
variable    pro_flag :bit;

BEGIN

--Initialise variables

CASE reset IS
  WHEN ret => CASE Intra_inter IS
    --reset on frame start, so do lpf--
    WHEN intra => pro_mode:= lpf_still;
    WHEN OTHERS => pro_mode:=lpf_send;
  END CASE;
  WHEN OTHERRS =>
    CASE lpf_done_d1 IS
      WHEN '1' => CASE Intra_inter IS
        WHEN intra => pro_mode:=still;
        WHEN OTHERS => pro_mode:= send;
      END CASE;
      WHEN OTHERS => CASE state IS
        WHEN downl => pro_mode:=
          mode_regs(3);
        --Jump sideways in oct 1--
        mode_regs(4);
        octave IS
        WHEN 0 =>pro_mode:= mode_regs(1);
        WHEN 1 =>pro_mode:= mode_regs(2);
        WHEN 2 =>pro_mode:= mode_regs(3);
      END CASE;
    END CASE;
  END CASE;
END;

```

```

5
10
15
20
25
30
35
40
45
50
55
WHEN 3 =>pro_mode := mode_rege(4);
CASE;
END CASE;

CASE direction IS
WHEN forward =>
END CASE;

CASE pro_mode IS
WHEN lps_stop|stop => null;
WHEN void => CASE orflag IS
WHEN '1' => new_mode := stop;
WHEN OTHERS => null;
END CASE;

WHEN void_still => null;
--Intra so must zero out all of tree--
WHEN still_send => token_length := B"01";
.IF nzflag='1' OR pro_new_z = '1' THEN token_out := B"00";
WHEN others => new_mode := void;
END CASE;

```



```

5      WHEN '1' => token_out := B"01";
6      new_mode:= still_send;
7
8      WHEN OTHERS => token_out := B"11";
9      new_mode:= send;
10
11      CASE
12
13          WHEN '0' => token_out := B"00";
14          WHEN '1' => token_out := B"10";
15
16          WHEN OTHERS => token_out := B"11";
17
18      END CASE;
19
20
21      ELSE
22
23          IF (motion = '1' OR origin
24              THEN
25                  token_out
26
27          ELSE
28              token_out := B"00";
29
30
31          WHEN OTHERS => token_out := B"11";
32
33      END IF;
34
35
36      END CASE;
37
38
39      WHEN still => token_length := B"01";
40          IF nzflag = '1' OR pro_new_z = '1'
41              THEN token_out := B"00";
42          new_mode:= void_still;
43
44          WHEN OTHERS => token_out := B"10";
45
46
47      END CASE;
48
49
50
51
52
53
54
55

```

```

5
10
15
20
25
30
35
40
45
50

      WHEN lpf_still =>          new_mode:= still;
                                END IF;

      WHEN lpf_send => difference := diff;
                            token_length:= B"01";
                            token_out := B"00";
                            token_length:= B"00";
                            new_mode:= still;

      IP noflag ='1' OR pro_no_z = '1'
      THEN token_out := B"00";
          new_mode:= lpf_stop;
      ELSE token_out := B"10";
          new_mode:= lpf_send;
      END IF;

      END CASE;
END IF;

WHEN Inverse => CASE pro_mode IS
                     WHEN lpf_stop/stop => null;
                     WHEN void => CASE ozflag IS
                                     WHEN '1' => new_mode := stop;
                                     WHEN OTHERS => null;
                     END CASE;
                     WHEN void_still => null;
                     WHEN send => CASE ozflag IS
                                     WHEN '1' => token_length := B"01";
                                     CASE token_ln(1) IS
                                         WHEN '1' => new_mode := still_send;
                                         WHEN '0' => new_mode := stop;
                                     END CASE;
                     END CASE;
END IF;

```



```

      5
      10
      15
      20
      25
      30
      35
      40
      45
      50

CASE token_in(1) IS
  WHEN '0' => new_mode := lpf_stop;
  WHEN '1' => new_mode := lpf_send;
END CASE;

WHEN lpf_still => null;
END CASE;

END CASE;

--relate variable to corresponding signals

out_2 <= pro_mode;
pro_mode_sig <= pro_mode;
out_3 <= token_out;
out_5 <= token_length;
out_6 <= new_mode;
new_mode_sig <= new_mode;
diff_sig <= difference;

END PROCESS MODE_CONTROL;

out_1 <= mode;
out_4 <= diff_out;

pre_mode_sig <= pro_mode_sig WHEN reset = reset OR lpf_done_dell = '1' ELSE
                                mode;

--Save the new mode difference during a token cycle, when the flags and tokens are valid--
-- on lpf_still & inverse no token cycles so load on skip cycle, just so next_mode is defined

load_next <= write WHEN cycle = token_cycle ELSE
                      write WHEN cycle = skip_cycle AND pro_mode_sig=lpf_still AND direction = inverse ELSE
                           read;

```

5

10

15

20

25

30

35

40

45

50

55

```

DFF_INIT(ck,no_rst,load_next,new_mode_sig,mode);
DFF_INIT(ck,no_rst,load_next,diff_sig,diff_out);

--now write the new mode value into the mode stack at end of cycle, for later use --
--dont update modes at tree base from lpf data, on reset next[1] is undefined--
--store base mode in mode(3)& mode(4), base changes after lpf--

load_mode <- (read,read,write) WHEN reset=rst OR lpf_done_dol='1' ELSE
                                (write,write,read,read) WHEN octave=1 AND load_mode_in=" write ELSE
                                (read,write,write,read) WHEN octave = 2 AND load_mode_in="write ELSE
                                (read,read,read,read) ;

DFF_INIT(ck,no_rst,load_mode(1),pre_mode_sig,mode_regs(1));
DFF_INIT(ck,no_rst,load_mode(2),pre_mode_sig,mode_regs(2));
DFF_INIT(ck,no_rst,load_mode(3),pre_mode_sig,mode_regs(3));
DFF_INIT(ck,no_rst,load_mode(4),pre_mode_sig,mode_regs(4));

```

END behave;

```

CONFIGURATION MODE_CONTROLL_CON OP_U_MODE_CONTROL IS
FOR behave
END FOR;
END MODE_CONTROLL_CON;

```

5

16

25

40

45

50

55

APPENDIX C: VHDL Language Implementation COUNTS 113

```

--A counter to control the sequencing of w, token, huffman cycles--
--decide reset is enabled 1 cycle early, and latched to avoid glitches--
--lpf_stop is a dummy mode to disable the block writes<@huffman data>--
--cycles for that block--
use work.DWT_TYPES.all;
use work.dff_package.all;
use work.U_CONTROL_COUNTER;

entity U_CONTROL_COUNTER IS
PORT(
    ck : in bit ;
    reset : in t_reset ;
    mode,new_mode : in t_mode ;
    direction : in t_direction ;
    out_0 : out t_load;
    out_1 : out t_cycle;
    out_2 : out t_reset;
    out_3 : out bit;
    out_4 : out bit;
    out_5 : out t_load;
    out_6 : out t_cs;
    out_7 : out t_load;
    out_8 : out t_cs) ;
end U_CONTROL_COUNTER;

--mode load,cycle,decide reset,read_addr_enable,write_addr_enable,load flags--
--decode write_addr_enable early and latch to avoid feedback loop with pro_mode--
--in MODB_CONTROL--
end U CONTROL_COUNTER;

```

```

architecture behave of U_CONTROL_COUNTER is
COMPONENT COUNT_SYNC
GENERIC (n:integer);
PORT(

```



```

      5          6          7          8          9          10
      15         20         25         30         35

      cs_new := no_sel;
      cs_old := sel;
      rw_old := read;
      read_addr_enable := '0';
      write_addr_enable := '0';

CASE direction IS
WHEN forward => CASE mode IS
WHEN send|still_send|lpf_send => CASE count_len IS
WHEN 0 to 3 => read_addr_enable := '1';
      cs_new := sel;
      token_cycle := token_cycle;
      load_flag := write;
      write_addr_enable := '1';

WHEN 4 => cycle := cycle;
      WHEN stop|lpf_stop =>

WHEN 5 to 7 => write_addr_enable := '1';
      CASE new_mode IS
      WHEN stop|lpf_stop =>

WHEN void => cycle := cycle;
      WHEN OTHERS => cycle := cycle;

      rw_old := write;
      data_cycle;
      rw_old := write;

WHEN 8 => decide_reset := rst;
      CASE new_mode IS
      WHEN stop|lpf_stop =>

END CASE;

```

```

      5
      10
      15
      20
      25
      30
      35
      40
      45
      50
      55

rw_old:= read;
cs_old:= no_sel;
skip_cycle;
load_mode:= write;
rw_old:= write;

data_cycle;
load_mode:= write;
rw_old:= write;

      WHEN void => cycle :=

      WHEN OTHERS => cycle :=

      WHEN OTHERS => null;
      END CASE;
      END CASE;

      WHEN count_len IS
      WHEN 0 to 3 => read_addr_enable := '1';
      CS_new := sel;
      WHEN 4 => cycle := token_cycle;
      write_addr_enable := '1';
      load_flag := written;
      WHEN 5 to 7 => rw_old := write;
      write_addr_enable := '1';
      CASE new_mode IS
      WHEN void_still => cycle
      WHEN OTHERS => cycle :=

      END CASE;
      END CASE;

      WHEN 8 => decide_reset := reset;

```

```

      5
      10
      15
      20
      25
      30
      35
      40
      45
      50

      rw_old:= write;
      load_mode:= write;
      CASE new mode IS
      WHEN void_still => cycle
      WHEN OTHERS => cycle !-
      END CASE;

      WHEN OTHERS => null;
      END CASE;

      WHEN lpf_still => CASE count_len IS
      WHEN 0 to 3 => read_addr_enable := '1';
      WHEN 4 => cycle := token_cycle;
      write_addr_enable := '1';
      load_flag := write;
      WHEN 5 to 7 => cycle := data_cycle;
      rw_old:= write;
      write_addr_enable := '1';
      WHEN 8 => cycle := data_cycle;
      rw_old:= write;
      decide_reset:= rst;
      load_mode:= write;
      WHEN OTHERS => null;
      END CASE;

      WHEN void => CASE count_len IS
      WHEN 0 to 3 => read_addr_enable := '1';
      WHEN 4 => load_flag := write;
      cycle:= token_cycle;
      WHEN 5 to 7 => write_addr_enable := '1';
      write_addr_enable := '1';
      --dummy token cycle for mode update--
      --keep counters going--

```

```

      5
      10
      15
      20
      25
      30
      35
      40
      45
      50
      55

      CASE new_mode IS
      WHEN stop => rw_old := rw;
      WHEN OTHERS => rw_old := rw;
      END CASE;

      WHEN 8 => decide_reset := rat;
      CASE new_mode IS
      WHEN stop => rw_old := rw;
      WHEN OTHERS => load_mode;
      END CASE;

      WHEN OTHERS => null;
      END CASE;

      WHEN void_still =>
      --allow for delay--
      WHENN count_len IS
      WHENN 0 => write_addr_enable := '1';
      WHENN 1 to 3 => write_addr_enable := '1';
      WHENN 4 => rw_old := write;
      WHENN OTHERS => null;
      END CASE;

      WHENN inverse => CASE mode IS
      WHEN OTHERS => null;
      END CASE;

```

```

      5
      10
      15
      20
      25
      30
      35
      40
      45
      50
      55

      WHEN send|still_send|lpf_send => CASE count_len IS
        WHEN 0 to 3 => read_addr_enable := '1';
        WHEN 4 => cycle := token_cycle;
          write_addr_enable := '1';
          load_flag:= write;
        WHEN 5 to 7 => write_addr_enable := '1';
          CASE new_mode IS
            WHEN stop!lpf_stop =>
              cycle := skip_cycle;
              rw_old:= read;
              cs_old:= no_sel;
              skip_cycle;
              rw_old:= write;
              data_cycle;
              rw_old:= write;
            END CASE,
        WHEN 8 => decide_reset := rst;
          CASE new_mode IS
            WHEN stop!lpf_stop =>
              cycle := skip_cycle;
              rw_old:= read;
              cs_old:= no_sel;
              skip_cycle;
              load_mode:= write;
              rw_old:= write;
            WHEN void => cycle :=
```

```

      5
      10
      15
      20
      25
      30
      35
      40
      45
      50

data_cycle;
load_mode:= write;
rw_old:= write;

      WHEN OTHERS => cycle :=

END CASE;

      WHEN OTHERS => null;
END CASE;
WHEN count_len IS
      WHEN 0 => null ;
      WHEN 1 => cycle := taken_cycle;
      WHEN 2 to 4 => rw_old := write;
      WHEN 5 => rw_old := write;
      WHEN 6 to 8 => write_addr_enable := '1';
      WHEN 9 to 11 => write_addr_enable := '0';
      WHEN void_still => cycle
      WHEN OTHERS => cycle :=

END CASE;

      WHEN 5 => rw_old:=write;
      WHEN 6 to 8 => write;
      WHEN 9 to 11 => write;
      WHEN OTHERS => cycle :=

END CASE;

      WHEN OTHERS => null;
END CASE;
WHEN lpf_still => CASE count_len IS
      WHEN 0 =>null ;
      WHEN 1 =>
      WHEN 2 to 4 => write;
      WHEN 5 => write;
      WHEN 6 to 8 => write;
      WHEN 9 to 11 => write;
      WHEN OTHERS => cycle :=

END CASE;

```

```

5
10
15
20
25
30
35
40
45
50
55

--match with previous--
--skip for write<sub>new</sub> delay--

WHEN 1 => write_addr_enable := '1';
WHEN 2 to 4 => cycle := data_cycle;
rw_old := write;
write_addr_enable := '1';
cycle := data_cycle;
rw_old := write;
decide_reset := reset;
load_mode := write;

WHEN OTHERS => null;
END CASE;

WHEN void =>
CASE count_len IS
WHEN 0 to 3 => read_addr_enable := '1';
WHEN 4 => load_flags := write;
cycle := token_cycle;

WHEN 5 to 7 => write_addr_enable := '1';
CASE new_mode IS
WHEN stop => rw_old :=

WHEN OTHERS => rw_old :=

WHEN void => decide_reset := reset;
CASE new_mode IS
WHEN stop => rw_old :=

read;
cs_old := no_sel;
write;

WHEN OTHERS => rw_old :=

END CASE;

WHEN 8 => decide_reset := reset;
CASE new_mode IS
WHEN stop => rw_old :=

cs_old := no_sel;
:= write;
rw_old := write;

```

```

5
10
15
20
25
30
35
40
45
50
55
5F.
WHEN void_still =>
CASE count_len IS
  WHEN 0 => null;
  WHEN 1 => write_addr_enable := '1';
  WHEN 2 to 4 => write_addr_enable := '1';
    rw_old := write;
    load_mode := write;
    decide_reset := reset;
  WHEN OTHERS => null;
END CASE;
END CASE;

--dummy as write delayed--
--match with reset--
WHEN OTHERS => null;
END CASE;
END CASE;

write_sig <= write_addr_enable;
decide_sig <= decide_reset;
DPP(ck,reset,write_sig,write_deli);
out_0 <= load_mode;
out_1 <= cycle;
out_2 <= decide_sig;
out_3 <= read_addr_enable;
out_4 <= write_deli;
out_5 <= load_flag;
out_6 <= cs_new;
out_7 <= rw_old;
out_8 <= cs_old;
END PROCESS;

WITH reset SELECT
count_reset <= reset WHEN reset,

```

5

10

15

20

25

30

35

40

45

50

control\_cnt, count\_sync GENERIC MAP(4) PORT MAP(ck, count\_reset, always\_one, count\_1, count\_2);  
decide\_sig WHEN OTHERS;  
END behave;  
CONFIGURATION CONTROL\_COUNTER\_CON OF U\_CONTROL\_COUNTER IS  
FOR behave  
FOR ALL:count\_sync USE ENTITY WORK.count\_sync(behave);  
END FOR;  
END FOR;  
END CONTROL\_COUNTER\_CON;

APPENDIX D: VHDL Language Implementation of Video Encoder/Decoder Integrated Circuit Chip

-- VHDL Description of Discrete Wavelet Transform Circuit --

```

ck : in bit ;
reset : in t_reset ;
col_end : in bit ;
mux_control : in t_mux4 ;
incr : in t_memory_addr ;
oct_add_factor : in t_memory_addr ;
base_u,base_v : in BIT_VECTOR(1 to 19) ;
out_1 : out t_memory_addr ;
and U NOMULT ;

```

architecture behave of it now!!! T IS

```

      5
      10
      15
      20
      25
      30
      35
      40
      45
      50
      55
      60
      65
      70
      75
      80
      85
      90
      95
      100

BEGIN
  temp <= '0' WHEN reset=rst ELSE
    '1' WHEN j='1' ELSR
    q;
  DFL(ck,temp,q);
  out_1 <= q;
END behave;

CONFIGURATION JKFF_CON OF JKPP
  FOR behave
    END FOR;
  END JKFF_CON;

USE WORK.dwt_types.all;
USE WORK.util.all;
USE WORK.util_dwt.all;
USE WORK.dff_package.all;

entity TOGGLE IS
  PORT(
    ck : IN bit;
    reset : IN t_reset;
    j:IN bit;
    out_1:OUT bit);
  end TOGGLE;

architecture behave of TOGGLE is
  signal temp:bit;
  signal q:bit;
BEGIN
  temp <= j XOR q;
  DFF(ck,reset,temp,q);
  out_1 <= q;
END behave;

      5
      10
      15
      20
      25
      30
      35
      40
      45
      50
      55
      60
      65
      70
      75
      80
      85
      90
      95
      100

DFF(ck,reset,next_addr,dff_out);
WITH col_end SELECT
  mux <= incr WHEN '0';
  oct_add_factor WHEN '1';
add<= dff_out + mux;
--architecture output--
out_1 <= dff_out;
END behave;

CONFIGURATION NOMULT_CON OF U_NOMULT IS
  FOR behave
    BND POR;
  END NOMULT_CON;

-- a toggle flip-flop
use WORK.dwt_types.all;
use WORK.util.all;
use WORK.util_dwt.all;
use WORK.dff_package.all;

entity JKFF IS
  PORT(
    ck : IN bit;
    reset : IN t_reset;
    j:IN bit;
    out_1:OUT bit);
  end JKFF;

architecture behave of JKFF is
  signal temp:bit;
  signal q:bit;
begin
  out_1:OUT bit);
end JKFF;

architecture behave of JKFF is
  signal temp:bit;
  signal q:bit;
begin
  out_1:OUT bit);
end JKFF;

```

5

10

15

20

25

30

35

55

```

CONFIGURATION TOGGLE_CON_OF_TOGGLE IS
FOR behave
END FOR,
END TOGGLE_CON;

```

```

--the read and write address generator, input the initial image & block sizes for octave 0 for the y channel --
use WORK.dwt_types.all;
use WORK.util.all;
use WORK.util_dwt.all;
use WORK.dff_package.all;

entity U_ADDR_GEN IS
port(
    ck : in bit ;
    reset : in t_reset ;
    direction : in t_direction ;
    channel : in t_channel ;
    x_P_1 : in BIT_VECTOR(1 to 10) ;
    x3_P_1 : in BIT_VECTOR(1 to 12) ;
    x7_P_1 : in BIT_VECTOR(1 to 13) ;
    octave_row_length : in BIT_VECTOR (1 to ysize) ;
    octave_col_length : in BIT_VECTOR (1 to xsize) ;
    octave_reset : in t_reset ;
    octave : in t_octave ;
    y_done : in bit ;
    uv_done : in bit ;
    octave_finished : in t_load ;
    base_u,base_v : in BIT_VECTOR(1 to 19) ;

out_1 : out t_input_mux;           --input data from memory/external

out_2_1 : out t_memory_addr;     -- memory port
out_2_2 : out t_memory_addr;
out_2_3 : out t_load;

out_3_1 : out t_load;           --dwt in control

```

5

10

15

20

25

30

40

45

50

55

```

out_3_2 : out t_c8;
out_4 : out t_load;           --IDWT data valid
out_5 : out t_load;          --read_valid
out_6 : out t_count_control; --row read
out_7_1 : out t_col;
out_7_2 : out t_count_control;
end U_ADDR_GEN;

```

--the current octave and when the block finishes the 3 octave transform--

```

architecture behave OF U_ADDR_GEN IS
COMPONENT U_MEM_CONTROL
PORT(
    ck : in bit ;
    reset : in t_reset ;
    direction : in t_direction ;
    channel : in t_channel ;
    octave : in t_octave ;
    addr_w,addr_r : in t_memory_addr ;
    zero_hh : in t_load ,
    out_1 : out t_input_mux;
    out_2_1 : out t_memory_addr;
    out_2_2 : out t_memory_addr;
    out_2_3 : out t_load;
    out_3_1 : out t_load;
    out_3_2 : out t_c8);
end COMPONENT;

COMPONENT JKFF
PORT(
    ck : in bit ;

```

5

10

15

20

25

30

45

50

55

```

reset : in t_reset ;
j:in bit;
out_1:out bit);
end COMPONENT;

COMPONENT U_ROM_COUNT
PORT(
    ck : in bit ;
    reset : in t_reset ;
    octave_cnt_length : in BIT_VECTOR(1 to ysize) ,
    col_carry: in t_count_control,
    out_1 : out t_row)
out_2 : out t_count_control);
--count value , and flag for count=0,1,2, row_length-1, row_length
end COMPONENT;

COMPONENT U_COL_COUNT
PORT(
    ck : in bit ;
    reset : in t_reset ,
    octave_cnt_length : in BIT_VECTOR(1 to xsize) ;
    out_1 : out t_col,
    out_2 : out t_count_control);
--count value , and flag for count=0,1,2,col_length-1, col_length
end COMPONENT;

COMPONENT U_NOMULT
PORT(
    ck : in bit ,
    reset : in t_reset ;
    col_end : in bit ;
    mux_control : in t_mux4 ;
    incr : in t_memory_addr;
    oct_add_factor : in t_memory_addr ;
    base_u,base_v : in BIT_VECTOR(1 to 19);

```

5

10

15

20

25

30

35

45

55

55

```

out_1 : out t_memory_addr;
end COMPONENT; <*>

signal mem_sel:t_mux4;
signal read_mux:t_mux4;
signal incr:t_memory_addr;
signal oct_add_factor:t_memory_addr;
signal add_2_y:BIT_VECTOR(1 to 13);
signal add_2_uv:BIT_VECTOR(1 to 13);
signal add_2:BIT_VECTOR(1 to 13);
signal addr_col_flag:BIT;
signal write_latency:BIT;
signal read_done:BIT;
signal zero_hh:t_load;
signal zero_hh_bit:bit;
signal read_done_bit:bit;
signal start_write_col:t_load;
signal read_valid:t_load;
signal addr_col_2:t_count_control;
signal addr_row_2:t_count_control;
signal addr_row_1:t_row;
signal addr_col_1:t_col;
signal all_done:bit;
signal all_one:bit;
signal temp0:bit;
signal temp1:bit;
signal temp2:bit;
signal temp3:bit;
signal temp4:bit;
signal temp5:bit;
signal temp6:bit;
signal read_addr:t_memory_addr;
signal write_addr:t_memory_addr;
signal mem_control_l:t_input_mux;

```

5

10

15

20

25

30

35

40

45

50

55

```

signal mem_control_2_1:t_memory_addr;
signal mem_control_2_2:t_memory_addr;
signal mem_ctrl_xp1_2_3:t_load;
signal mem_control_3_1:t_load;
signal mem_control_3_2:t_ce;
BEGIN

WITH octave SELECT
incr <= 1 WHEN 0,
              2 WHEN 1,
              4 WHEN 2,
              6 WHEN 3;

WITH octave SELECT
add_2_y <= B"0000000000000001" WHEN 0,
          B"000" & x_P_1(1 to 8) & B"10" WHEN 1,
          B"0" & x3_P_1(1 to 9) & B"100" WHEN 2,
          x7_P_1(1 to 9) & B"1000" WHEN 3;

WITH octave SELECT
add_2_uv <= B"0000000000000001" WHEN 0,
          B"0000" & x_P_1(1 to 7) & B"10"
          B"00" & x3_P_1(1 to 8) & B"100"
          B"0" & x7_P_1(1 to 8) & B"1000"
          WHEN 3;

WITH channel SELECT
add_2 <= add_2_y WHEN Y,
               add_2_uv WHEN OTHERS;

oct_add_factor <= U_TO_I(add_2);

--signals when write must start delayed 1 tu for use in zero_hh--
--decode to bit--
WITH addr_col_2 SELECT
addr_col_flag <= '1' WHEN count_carry ,

```

```

5
10
15
20
25
30
35
40
45
50
55
60
65
70
75
80
85
90
95
0' WHEN OTHERS,
      WHEN '1' WHEN addr_row_1 = 2 AND addr_col_1 = conv2d_latency-1 ELSE '0';
      WHEN addr_row_2 = count_carry AND addr_col_flag = '1' ELSE '0';

WITH zero_hh_bit SELECT
zero_hh <= write WHEN '1',
                           read WHEN '0';

WITH read_done_bit SELECT
read_valid <= write WHEN '1',
                           read WHEN '0';

DPP(ck,reset,zero_hh,start_write_col); --1 tu after zero_hh--

read_mux <-tres WHEN y_done='1' AND uv_done='0' AND octave_finished=write AND channel=y ELSE --base_u--
             tres WHEN y_done='0' AND uv_done='0' AND octave_finished=write AND channel=u ELSE
             quattro WHEN y_done='0' AND uv_done='1' AND octave_finished=write AND channel=u ELSE
             quattro WHEN y_done='0' AND uv_done='0' AND octave_finished=write AND channel=v ELSE --base_v--
             dos WHEN y_done='0' AND octave_finished=write AND channel=y ELSE
                  uno; --base_y--


write_mux <- uno WHEN zero_hh & write ELSE
                     dos WHEN channel=y ELSE -- keep address 0 --base_y--
                     tres WHEN channel=u ELSE --base_u--
                     quattro; --base_v--


--note that all the counters have to be reset at the end of an octave, ie on octave_finished--
--the, row&col, counts, for, the, read, address--


col_map: U_COL_COUNT PORT MAP(ck,octave_reset,octave_col_length,addr_col_1,addr_col_2);
row_map: U_ROW_COUNT PORT MAP(ck,octave_reset,octave_row_length,addr_col_2,addr_row_1,addr_row_2);

```

```

5
10
15
20
25
30
35
40
45
50
55

    all_one <='1';

    tog_1:JKFF PORT MAP(ck,octave_reset,write_latency,zero_hh_bit);
    tog_2:JKFF PORT MAP(ck,octave_reset,read_done,read_done_bit);

    --wfer addresses for sparc mem---

    --conv_2d PIPELINE DELAY ON THIS FLAG

    DF1(ck,addr_col_flag,temp0);
    DF1(ck,temp0,temp1);
    DF1(ck,temp1,temp2);
    DF1(ck,temp2,temp3);
    DF1(ck,temp3,temp4);
    DF1(ck,temp4,temp5);
    DF1(ck,temp5,temp6);

    read_map:U_NORLUT PORT MAP(ck,reset,addr_col_flag,read_mux,incr_oct_add_factor,base_u,base_v,read_addr);
    write_map:U_NORLUT PORT MAP(ck,reset,temp6,write_mux,incr_oct_add_factor,base_u,base_v,write_addr);

    mem_ctrl_map: U_MEH_CONTROL PORT MAP(ck,reset,direction,channel/octave,write_addr,read_addr,zero_hh,
    mem_control_1,mem_control_2_1,mem_control_2_2,mem_control_2_3,mem_control_3_1,mem_control_3_2);

    --architecture outputs---

    out_1 <mem_control_1;

    out_2_1<= mem_control_2_1;
    out_2_2 <= mem_control_2_2;
    out_2_3 <= mem_control_2_3;

    out_3_1 <= mem_control_3_1;
    out_3_2 <= mem_control_3_2;

    out_4 <= zero_hh;
    out_5 <= read_valid;

```

5

10

15

20

25

30

35

50

55

```

out_6 <=addr_row_2;
out_7_1<=addr_oqa_1;
out_7_2<=addr_col_2;

END;

CONFIGURATION ADDR_GEN_CON OF U_ADDR_GEN IS
  FOR behave
    USE ENTITY WORK.U_NOMULT(behave);
  END FOR;
  FOR ALL:U_MEM_CONTROL USE ENTITY WORK.U_MEM_CONTROL(behave);
  END FOR;
  FOR ALL:U_COL_COUNT USE ENTITY WORK.U_COL_COUNT(behave);
  END FOR;
  FOR ALL:U_ROW_COUNT USE ENTITY WORK.U_ROW_COUNT(behave);
  END FOR;
  FOR ALL:JKFF USE ENTITY WORK.JKFF(behave);
  END FOR;
END FOR;

END ADDR_GEN_CON;
--the basic 2d convolver for forward transform, rows first then cols
--cols first then rows for the inverse transform
use WORK.dwt_types.all;
use WORK.util.all;
use WORK.util_dwt.all;
use WORK.dfft_package.all;

entity U_CONV_2D IS
PORT(
  ck : in bit ;
  reset : in t_reset ;
  in_in : in t_input ;
  direction : in t_direction ;
  pdel : in t_scratch_array(1 to 4) ;
  conv_reset : in t_reset ;

```

5

10

15

20

25

30

35

40

45

50

55

```

row_flag : in t_count_control ,
addr_col_read_1 : in t_col ,
addr_col_readq : in t_count_control ,

out_1 : out t_input;
out_2_1 : out t_scratch_array(1 to 4);
out_2_2 : out t_col;
out_2_3 : out t_col;
out_3 : out t_count_control;
out_4 : out t_count_control;
out_5 : out t_count_control;
end U_CONV_2D;

--forward direction outputs in row form --
-- HH HG HH HG to to .   --
-- HG GG HG GG to to .   --
-- HH HG HH HG to to .   --
-- HG GC HG GG to to .   --
--the inverse convolver returns the raster scan format output data--
--the convolver automatically returns a 3 octave transform--

architecture behave OF U_CONV_2D IS

COMPONENT U_CONV_ROW
PORT(
    ck : in bit ;
    reset : in t_reset ;
    direction : in t_direction ;
    in_in : in t_input ;
    col_flag : in t_count_control ;
    out_1 : out t_input ) ;
end COMPONENT;

COMPONENT U_CONV_COL
PORT(

```

65

```

5
10
15
20
25
30
35
40
45
50
55

clk : in bit ;
reset : in t_reset ;
direction : t_diffr_t_direction ;
in_in : in t_input ;
pde1 : in t_scratch_array(1 to 4) ;
row_flag : in t_count_control ;
col_count_1 : in t_col ;
col_count_2 : in t_count_control ;

out_1 : out t_input ;
out_2 : out t_scratch_array(1 to 4) ;
out_3 : out t_col ;
end COMPONENT;

signal col_count_2:t_count_control;
signal row_reset:t_reset;
signal col_reset:t_reset;
signal temp1:t_reset;
signal temp2:t_reset;
signal conv_reset_inv:t_reset;
signal col_reset_forw:t_reset;
signal addr_temp1:t_count_control;
signal addr_temp2:t_count_control;
signal addr_col_rd:t_count_control;
signal col_flag1:t_count_control;
signal row_temp0:t_count_control;
signal row_temp1:t_count_control;
signal row_temp2:t_count_control;
signal row_temp3:t_count_control;
signal row_temp4:t_count_control;
signal row_control:t_count_control;
signal col_temp0:t_col;
signal col_temp1:t_col;
signal col_temp2:t_col;
signal col_temp3:t_col;
signal col_count_1:t_col;

```

5  
10  
15  
20  
25  
30  
35  
40  
45  
50  
55

```

signal addr_temp4:t_count_control;
signal addr_temp3:t_count_control;
signal del_conv_col:t_count_control;
signal del_conv_row:t_input;
signal del_conv_init_input;
signal row_in:t_input;
signal conv_row:t_input;
signal conv_col:t_input;
signal col_init_input;
signal del_init_input;
signal pdel_out:t_scratch_array(1 to 4);
signal wr_addr:t_col,
BEGIN

--reset must be delayed for row convolver depending on direction of transform
DF1(ck,conv_reset,temp1);
DF1(ck,temp1,conv_reset_inv);

WITH direction SELECT
row_reset <= conv_reset WHEN forward ,
                           conv_reset_inv WHEN inverse ; --pipeline delay in col_conv--

--reset must be delayed for col convolver depending on direction of transform
DF1(ck,conv_reset_inv,temp2);
DF1(ck,temp2,col_reset_forw);

WITH direction SELECT
col_reset <= col_reset_forw WHEN forward ,
                                    conv_reset WHEN inverse ; --pipeline delay in row_conv--

-- counter flags must be delayed for col convolver depending on pipelining
DF1(ck,addr_col_read_2,addr_temp1);
DF1(ck,addr_temp1,addr_col_rd_de1);

WITH direction SELECT
addr_temp2 <= addr_col_read_2 WHEN forward,

```

```

5
10
15
20
25
30
35
40
45
50
55

    addr_col_rd_del WHEN inverse;
    DF1(ck,addr_temp2,col_flag);

    -- counter flags must be delayed for row convolver depending on pipelining
    DF1(ck,row_flag,row_temp0);
    DF1(ck,row_temp0,row_temp1);
    DF1(ck,row_temp1,row_temp2);
    DF1(ck,row_temp2,row_temp3);

    WITH direction SELECT
    row_temp4 <= row_temp3 WHEN forward,
    row_flag WHEN inverse;

    DP1(ck,row_temp4,row_control);

    --Pipeline delays for col counter, count value
    DP1(ck,addr_col_read1,col_temp0);
    DP1(ck,col_temp0,col_temp1);
    DP1(ck,col_temp1,col_temp2);
    DP1(ck,col_temp2,col_temp3);
    WITH direction SELECT
    col_count_1 <= col_temp3 WHEN forward,
    addr_col_read1 WHEN inverse;

    -- similar for carry flag of col counter
    DP1(ck,addr_col_rd_del,addr_temp3);
    DP1(ck,addr_temp3,addr_temp4);
    WITH direction SELECT
    col_count_2 <= addr_temp4 WHEN forward,
    addr_col_read2 WHEN inverse;

    --Pipeline delays for the convolver values and input value--
    DP1(ck,conv_col_del_conv_col);

```

4

10

15

20

25

30

35

50

```

DF1(ck,conv_row,del_conv_row);

DF1(ck,in_ln,del_in);

WITH direction SELECT
row_in <= del_in WHEN forward,
    del_conv_col WHEN inverse;

row_map: U_CONV_ROW PORT MAP (ck,row_reset,direction,col_in,pdel,row_control,col_count_1,col_count_2,
                                conv_col,pdel_out,wr_addr);

WITH direction SELECT
col_in <= del_conv_row WHEN forward,
    del_in WHEN inverse;

col_map: U_CONV_COL PORT MAP(ck,col_reset,direction,col_in,pdel,row_control,col_count_1,col_count_2,
                                conv_col,pdel_out,wr_addr);

--architecture outputs
WITH direction SELECT
out_1 <= del_conv_col WHEN forward,
    del_conv_row WHEN inverse;

out_2_1<= pdel_out;
out_2_2 <= wr_addr;
out_2_3 <= col_count_1;

out_3 <= row_control;
out_4 <= col_count_2;
out_5 <= col_flag;

end behave;

CONFIGURATION CONV_2D_CON OF U_CONV_2D IS
FOR behave
  FOR ALL:U_CONV_COL           USE ENTITY WORK.U_CONV_COL(behave);
  END FOR;
  FOR ALL:U_CONV_ROW           USE ENTITY WORK.U_CONV_ROW(behave);

```

5

10

15

20

25

30

35

40

50

55

```

      END FOR;
END FOR;
END CONV_2D_COPY;

-- 1d col convolver, with control --

use WORK.dwt_types.all;
use WORK.util.all;
use WORK.util_dwt.all;
use WORK.dff_package.all;
-- a $2 line by line resettable counter for the state machines, out->one on reset--
--carry active on last element of row--
entity U_COUNTCOL_2 is
PORT(
  ck : in bit ;
  reset : in t_reset ;
  carry: in t_count_control;
  out_1 : out t_count_2 ) ;
end U_COUNTCOL_2;

architecture behave OF U_COUNTCOL_2 IS
signal countdel:t_count_2;
signal countout:t_count_2;
BEGIN
PROCESS(ck,reset,carry)
BEGIN

IF reset = '1' THEN countout <=one;
ELSIF countdel='one' AND carry = count_carry THEN countout <=
two;
ELSIF null;
END IF;
DF1(ck,countout,countdel);
--architecture output--
out_1 <= countdel;
END PROCESS;

```

5

10

15

20

25

30

40

50

55

```

END behave;
CONFIGURATION COUNTCOL_2_COL OF U_COUNTCOL_2 IS
  POR behave
END FOR;
END COUNTCOL_2_COL;

use WORK.dwt.types.all;
use WORK.util.all;
use WORK.util_dwt.all;
use WORK.diff_package.all;
entity U_CONV_COL IS
PORT(
  ck : in bit ;
  reset : in t_reset ;
  direction : in t_direction ;
  in_in : in t_input ;
  pdel : in t_scratch_array(1 to 4) ;
  row_flag : in t_count_control ,
  col_count_1 : in t_col ,
  col_count_2 : in t_count_control ,
  out_1 : out t_input;
  out_2 : out t_scratch_array(1 to 4);
  out_3 : out t_col);
end U_CONV_COL;

```

architecture behave OF U\_CONV\_COL IS

--input is data in and, pdel, out from line-delay memories--  
-- out is (G,H), and line delay out port. The row counter is started 1 cycle later to allow for--  
-- pipeline delay between MULTIPLIER and this unit --

```

COMPONENT U_COUNTCOL_2
PORT(
  ck : in bit ;

```

5

10

15

20

25

30

35

40

45

50

55

```

reset : in t_reset ;
carry: in t_count_control;
out_1 : out t_count_2 ) ;
end COMPONENT;

COMPONENT U_ROUND_BITS
PORT(
in_in :in t_ecratch;
sel:in t_round);
out_1:out t_input);
end COMPONENT;

COMPONENT U_MULT_ADD
PORT(
reset : in t_reset ;
in_in : in t_and_array(1 to 3) ;
andsel : in t_and_array(1 to 3) ;
controlmuxsel : in t_mux_array(1 to 2) ;
muxsel : in t_mux4_array(1 to 3) ;
muxandsel : in t_and_array(1 to 3) ;
addsel : in t_add_array(1 to 4) ;
direction : in t_direction ;
pdsl : in t_ecratch_array(1 to 4) ;
out_1 : out t_ecratch_array(1 to 4) );
end COMPONENT;

signal row_control:t_count_control;
signal row_control_delt:t_count_control;
signal col_carry:t_count_control;
signal reset_row:t_reset;
signal shift_const:t_round;

signal andsel1:t_and_array(1 to 3);
signal muxandsel:t_and_array(1 to 3);

```

5  
10  
15  
20  
25  
30  
35  
40  
45  
50  
55

```

signal addselit_add_array(1 to 4);
signal count_count_2;
signal count_delt_count_2;
signal centermuxselit_mux_array(1 to 2);
signal muxselit_mux4_array(1 to 3);
signal mult_addit_scratch_array(1 to 4);
signal pdel_init_scratch_array(1 to 4);
signal pdel_outit_scratch_array(1 to 4);
signal pdell_delt_scratch;
signal gh_outit_scratch;
signal rb_outit_scratch;

signal col_count_temp:t_col;
signal wr_addrit_col;
signal rd_addrit_col;
signal gh_select:t_mux;
BEGIN
--the code for the convolver--

DPL(ck,reset,reset_row);

--starts row counter 1 cycle after frame start--
--we want the row counter to be 1 cycle behind the col counter for the delay for the--
--pipelined line delay memory---

DFF(ck,reset,col_count_2,col_carry);

--these need to be synchronised to keep the row counter aligned with the data stream--
--also the delay on col_count deglitches the col carryout--

row_control <= row_flag;           --signal for row<=0:1:2:3; last row; etc--
                                         --zero ,
```

ansel(1) <= pass WHEN direction = forward AND count=one ELSE
 zero WHEN direction = forward AND count=two ELSE
 pass WHEN direction=inverse AND count=two ELSE
 zero ;

```

      5
      10
      15
      20
      25
      30
      35
      40
      45
      50
      55

WITH row_control SELECT
  andsel(2) <= zero WHEN count_0 ,
    pass WHEN OTHERS;

  andsel(3) <= zero WHEN direction=forward AND row_control = count_0 ELSE
    pass;

--now the add/sub control for the convolver address--
WITH count SELECT
  addsel <= (add,add,subt) WHEN one ,
    (add,subt,add,add) WHEN two ;

--now the mux control--
centermuxsel <= (left,right) WHEN (direction = forward AND count = one) OR (direction = inverse AND count = two) ELSE
  (right,left);

--the addmuxsel signal--
muxandsel(1 to 2) <= (pass,andsel(2)) WHEN direction = inverse ELSE
  (andsel(2),pass) ;
  andsel(3) <= zero WHEN direction = inverse AND row_control=count_1 ELSE
    pass WHEN direction = inverse ELSE
      andsel(2);

  muxsel(1) <= dos WHEN direction = inverse AND row_control=count_0 ELSE
    quattro WHEN direction = inverse AND row_control=count_1 ELSE
      tres WHEN direction = inverse AND row_control= count_lmt1 ELSE
        dos WHEN direction = inverse ELSE
          uno;
  muxsel(2) <= tres WHEN direction = inverse AND row_control= count_0 ELSE
    dos WHEN direction = inverse AND row_control= count_1 ELSE
      uno WHEN direction = inverse ELSE
        dos WHEN direction = forward AND row_control= count_0 ELSE
          tres WHEN direction = forward AND row_control= count_carry ELSE
            uno;
  muxsel(3) <= uno WHEN direction = inverse ELSE
    
```

5

10

15

20

25

35

40

45

50

55

```

tree WHEN direction = forward AND row_control= count_0 ELSE
      quattro WHEN direction = forward AND row_control= count_carry ELSE
      '000;

COUNT_MAP: U_COUNTCOL_2 PORT MAP(ck,reset_row,col_carry, count);

-- set up the r/w address for the line delay memory
--need 2 delays between wr and rd addr

DP1(ck,col_count_1,col_count_temp);
DP1(ck,col_count_temp,wr_addr);
rd_addr <= col_count_1;

--in the control signals to the mult_add block--
MULT_ADD_MAP: U_MULT_ADD PORT
MAP(reset,in_in,andsel,centermuxsel,muxsel,muxandsel,address,direction,pdel_out,mult_addr);

--delay to catch the write address
DP1(ck,mult_add(1),pdel_in(1));
DP1(ck,mult_add(2),pdel_in(2));
DP1(ck,mult_add(3),pdel_in(3));
DP1(ck,mult_add(4),pdel_in(4));

--read delay to match MULt delay
DP1(ck,pdel(1),pdel_out(1));
DP1(ck,pdel(2),pdel_out(2));
DP1(ck,pdel(3),pdel_out(3));
DP1(ck,pdel(4),pdel_out(4));

DP1(ck,count,count_dsel);

st_select <= right WHEN (direction = inverse AND count_dsel = one) OR (direction = forward AND count_dsel = two) ELSE
      left;

DP1(ck,pdel_out(1), pdel1_dsel);

```

5  
10  
15  
20  
25  
30  
35  
40  
45  
50  
55

```

gh_out <= MUX_2(pdol_in(4),pdoll_d1,gh_select);

DF1(ch,row_ctrl, row_control_d1);

shift_const <= shift3 WHEN direction = inverse AND (row_control_d1=0 OR row_control_d1=1) ELSE
shift4 WHEN direction = inverse ELSE
shift5;

RB_MAP: U_ROUND_BITS PORT MAP(gh_out,shift_const,rb_out);
--architecture outputs--
out_1 <= rb_out;
out_2 <= pdol_in;
out_3 <= wr_addr;

END behave;

CONFIGURATION conv_col_con OF U_CONV_COL IS
FOR behave
  FOR ALL:U_ROUND_BITS           USE ENTITY WORK.U_ROUND_BITS(behave);
  END FOR;
  FOR ALL:U_COUNTCOL_2           USE ENTITY WORK.U_COUNTCOL_2(behave);
  END FOR;
  FOR ALL:U_MULT_ADD             USE ENTITY WORK.U_MULT_ADD(behave);
  END FOR;
END FOR;
END conv_col_con;

-- a v2 line by line resetable counter for the state machine, out->one on rst---
use WORK.dwt_types.all;
use WORK.util.all;
use WORK.util_dwt.all;
use WORK.dff_package.all;
entity U_COUNT_2 IS
PORT(
  ck : IN bit;
  reset : IN t_reset;

```

```

5
out_1 : out t_count_2 ) ;
end U_COUNT_2;
$R

10

15

20

25

30

35

40

45

50

55

architecture behave of U_COUNT_2 is
  signal countdel:t_count_2;
  signal countout:t_count_2;
BEGIN

  countout <= one WHEN reset = ret OR countdel= two ELSE
    two ;
  DP1(ck,countout,countdel);
--architecture outpute--
  out_1 <= countdel;
END;

CONFIGURATION COUNT_2_CON OF U_COUNT_2 IS
  POR behave
  END POR;
  END COUNT_2_CON;

--the ld convolver, with control and coeff extend--
use WORK.dut_types.all;
use WORK.util.all;
use WORK.diff_package.all;
use WORK.util_dut.all;

entity U_CONV_ROW IS
PORT(
  ck : in bit ;
  reset : in t_reset ;
  direction : in t_direction ;
  ln_in : in t_input ;
  col_flag : in t_count_control ;

```

5

10

15

20

25

30

35

40

45

50

55

```

out_1 : out t_Input ) ;
end U_CONV_ROW;

```

architecture behave OF U\_CONV\_ROW IS

```

-- out is (G,H). The row counter is started 1 cycle later to allow for--
-- pipeline delay between MULTIPLIER and this unit --
-- the strings give the col & row lengths for this octave--
COMPONENT U_ROUND_BITS
PORT(
  In_in : in t_scratch;
  sel : in t_round,
  out_1 : out t_Input);
end COMPONENT;

COMPONENT U_COUNT_2
PORT(
  ck : in bit;
  reset : in t_reset;
  out_1 : out t_count_2 );
end COMPONENT;

COMPONENT U_MULT_ADD
PORT(
  reset : in t_reset;
  in_in : in t_Input;
  endsel : in t_and_array(1 to 3);
  centermuxsel : in t_mux_array(1 to 2);
  muxsel : in t_mux4_array(1 to 3);
  muxandsel : in t_and_array(1 to 3);
  addsel : in t_add_array(1 to 4);
  direction : in t_direction;
  edsel : in t_scratch_array(1 to 4));

```

```

5
10
15
20
25
30
35
40
45
50
55

out_1 : out t_scratch_array(1 to 4) ;
end COMPONENT;

signal reset_colit_reset;
signal col_control_t_count_control;
signal temp:t_and;
signal andsel1:t_and_array(1 to 3);
signal muxandsel:t_and_array(1 to 3);
signal addsel1:t_add_array(1 to 4);
signal count:t_count_2;
signal centermuxsel:t_mux_array(1 to 2);
signal muxsel:t_mux4_array(1 to 3);
signal mult_addt_scratch_array(1 to 4);
signal pdellt_scratch_array(1 to 4);
signal pdell_delit_scratch;
signal rb_out:t_scratch;
signal gh_out:t_scratch;
signal rb_select:t_round;
signal gh_select:t_mux;

BEGIN

--the code for the convolver--
-- now the state machine to control the convolver--
--First the and gates--

DFL(ck,reset,reset_col);
--starts row counter 1 cycle after frame start--
--makes up for the pipeline delay in MULT--
--LATENCY DEOENDENT!!!--

col_control <= col_flag;
--flag when col_count<=0;1/2,col_length;etc---

andsel(1) <= pass WHEN direction = forward AND count-one ELSE
zero WHEN direction = forward AND count=two ELSE
pass WHEN direction=inverse AND count=two ELSE
zero ;


```

5  
10  
15  
20  
25  
30  
35  
40  
45  
50

```

WITH col_control% SELECT
  andsel(2) <= zero WHEN count_0 ,
  pass WHEN OTHERS;

andsel(3) <= zero WHEN direction=forward AND col_control = count_0 ELSE
  pass;

--now the add/sub control for the convolver address--
WITH count SELECT
  addsel <= (add,add,add,subt) WHEN one ,
  (add,subt,add,add) WHEN two ;

--now the mux control--
centermusel <= (left,right) WHEN (direction = forward AND count = one) OR (direction = inverse AND count = two) ELSE
  (right,left);

--the adddmuxsel signal--
muxandsel(1 to 2) <= (pass,andsel(2)) WHEN direction = inverse ELSE
  (andsel(2),pass) ,
  <= zero WHEN direction = inverse AND col_control=count_1 ELSE
  pass WHEN direction = inverse ELSE
  andsel(2);

muxsel(1) <= dos WHEN direction = inverse AND col_control=count_0 ELSE
  quattro WHEN direction = inverse AND col_control=count_1 ELSE
  tres WHEN direction = inverse AND col_control=count_1m1 ELSE
  dos WHEN direction = inverse ELSE
  uno;

muxsel(2) <= tres WHEN direction = inverse AND col_control=count_0 ELSE
  dos WHEN direction = inverse AND col_control= count_0 ELSE
  uno WHEN direction = inverse ELSE
  dos WHEN direction = forward AND col_control=count_0 ELSE
  tres WHEN direction = forward AND col_control= count_0 ELSE
  uno;

muxsel(3) <= uno WHEN direction = inverse ELSE

```

```

5
10
15
20
25
30
35
40
45
50

tree WHEN direction = forward AND col_control=count_0 ELSE
quattro WHEN direction = forward AND col_control= count_carry ELSE
doe;

COUNT_MAP: U_COUNT_2 PORT MAP(ck,reset_col, count);

--join the control signals to the mult_add block--
MULT_ADD_MAP: U_MULT_ADD PORT
MAP(reset,in_in,andsel,centermuxsel,muxsel,addsel,direction,pdel,mult_addr);

--pipeline delay for mult-add,unit---

DPL1(ck,mult_add(1),pdel(1));
DPL1(ck,mult_add(2),pdel(2));
DPL1(ck,mult_add(3),pdel(3));
DPL1(ck,mult_add(4),pdel(4));

gh_select <= left WHEN (direction = inverse AND count =one) OR (direction = forward AND count =two) ELSE
right;

DPL1(ck,pdel(1), pde11_dsel);

gh_out <= MUX_2(pdel(4),pde11_dsel,gh_select);

rb_select <=
shift3 WHEN direction = inverse AND (col_control=count_2 OR col_control=count_3) ELSE
shift4 WHEN direction = Inverse ELSE
shift5;

RB_MAP: U_ROUND_BITS PORT MAP(gh_out,rb_select,rb_out);
--architecture outputs--
out_1 <= rb_out;

END behave;

CONFIGURATION CONV_ROW_CON OF U_CONV_ROW IS
FOR behave
  FOR ALL:U_ROUND_BITS
    USE ENTITY WORK.U_ROUND_BITS(behave);

```

```

5
10
15
20
25
30
35
40
45
50
55

END FOR;
FOR ALL:U_COUNT_2 USE ENTITY WORK.U_COUNT_2 (behave);
END FOR;
FOR ALL:U_MULT_ADD USE ENTITY WORK.U_MULT_ADD (behave);
END FOR;
END FOR;
END CONV_ROW_CON;
--The basic toggle flip-flop plus and gate for a synchronous counter
--Input t is the toggle ,outputs are q and tc (toggle for next counter)
--stage
-- reset is synchronous, ie active on final count
USE WORK.DWT_TYPES.all;
USE WORK.DFF_PACKAGE.all;

entity BASIC_COUNT is
PORT(
    ck:in bit;reset:in t_reset;en:in bit;qout:out bit;carry:out bit);
end BASIC_COUNT;

architecture behave OF BASIC_COUNT IS
signal dlat:bit;
signal in_diff:bit;
signal reset_bit:bit;
BEGIN
WITH reset SELECT
    reset_bit <= '0' WHEN rst,
                           '1' WHEN no_rst;
    in_diff<=(dlat XOR en) AND reset_bit;
    DFI(ck,in_diff,dlat),
    carry<-dlat AND en;
    q<-dlat;
END behave;

configuration basic_count_con of basic_count IS

```

```

5
FOR behave
END for;
end basic_count5;on;

10
-- The n-bit macro counter generator, en is the enable, the outputs
-- are msb(bit 1).....lsb,carry. This is the same order as ELLA strings are stored#
use work.DWT_TYPES.all;

15
entity COUNT_SYNC is
  GENERIC (n:integer);
  PORT(
    clk:in bit ;
    reset,in t_reset,
    en,in bit,
    q:out bit_vector(1 to n),
    carry:out bit);
  end COUNT_SYNC;

```

10  
15  
20  
25

30  
35

45

50

55

```

architecture behave OF COUNT_SYNC is
COMPONENT basic_count
PORT(
  clk:in bit ,reset,in t_reset,en:in bit,q:out bit,carry:out bit);
end COMPONENT;

signal enable:bit_vector(1 to n+1);
BEGIN
enable(n+1)<=en;
cl: for i in n downto 1 generate
  bc: basic_count PORT MAP(clk,reset,enable(i+1),q(i),enable(i));
  end generate;
  carry<=enable(1);
end behave;

```

--configuration for simulation

5

10

15

20

25

35

40

45

50

55

```

CONFIGURATION COUNT_SYNC_CON OF COUNT_SYNC IS
FOR behave
  FOR ALL: basic_count USE ENTITY WORK.basic_count(behave);
END FOR;
END FOR;
END COUNT_SYNC_CON;

use WORK.dwt.types.all;
use WORK.util.all;
use WORK.util_dwt.all;
use WORK.dff_package.all;

entity U_COL_COUNT IS
PORT(
  ck : in bit ;
  reset : in t_reset ;
  octave_cnt_length : in BIT_VECTOR(1 to nsize) ;
  out_1 : out t_col;
  out_2 : out t_count_control);
--count value , and flag for count=0,1,2,col_length-1, col_length
end U_COL_COUNT;

architecture behave OF U_COL_COUNT IS
COMPONENT COUNT_SYNC
GENERIC (n:integer);
PORT(
  ck:in bit ;
  reset:in t_reset;
  en:in bit;
  q:out bit_vector(1 to n);
  carry:out bit);
end COMPONENT;

```

5

10

15

20

25

30

35

45

50

55

```

signal count_control:t_count_control;
signal count_reset:t_reset;
signal count_flag:bit;
signal all_one:bit;
signal count_str:BIT_VECTOR(1 to xsize);
signal count_it,col;

BEGIN
count <= U_TO_I(count_str);

count_control <= count_0 WHEN count= 0 ELSE
count_1 WHEN count = 1 ELSE
count_2 WHEN count = 2 ELSE
count_3 WHEN count = 3 ELSE
count_lim1 WHEN count = (U_TO_I(octave_cnt_length) -1) ELSE
count_carry WHEN count = U_TO_I(octave_cnt_length) ELSE
count_rst;

count_reset <= rst WHEN reset =rst ELSE
rst WHEN count_control = count_carry ELSE
no_rst;

all_one <= '1';

count_map:COUNT_SYNC GENERIC MAP(xsize) PORT MAP(rst,count_set,all_one,count_nr,count_no);--count always enabled

--Architecture Outputs--
out_1 <= count;
out_2 <= count_control;
END behave;

CONFIGURATION COL_COUNT_CON OF U_COL_COUNT IS
FOR behave
  FOR ALL:COUNT_SYNC USE CONFIGURATION WORK.count_sync_con;
  END FOR;
END COL_COUNT_CON;

```

```

      5
      10
      15
      20
      25
      30
      35
      40
      45
      50
      55

use WORK.dut_types.all;
use WORK.util.all;
use WORK.util_dmt.all;
use WORK.dff_package.all;

entity U_ROW_COUNT    IS
PORT(
      ck : in bit ;
      reset : in t_reset ;
      octave_cnt_length : in BIT_VECTOR(1 to ysize) ;
      col_carry: in t_count_control;
      out_1 : out t_row;
      out_2 : out t_count_control);
--count value , and flag for count=0,1,2, row_length-1, row_length
end U_ROW_COUNT;

architecture behave OF U_ROW_COUNT IS
COMPONENT COUNT_SYNC
GENERIC (n:integer);
PORT(
      ck:in bit ;
      reset:in t_reset;
      en:in bit;
      q:out bit_vector(1 to n);
      carry:out bit);
end COMPONENT;

signal count_control:t_count_control;
signal count_reset:t_reset;
signal count_flag:bit;
signal count_en:bit;
signal count_str:BIT_VECTOR(1 to ysize);
signal count:t_row;

```

```

5
10
15
20
25
30
35
40
45
50
55

BEGIN
  count <= 0 TO I(count_str);
  spf
  --count_control <=
  count_control <=
    count_0 WHEN reset= rst ELSE
    count_0 WHEN count= 0 ELSE
    count_1 WHEN count= 1 ELSE
    count_2 WHEN count= 2 ELSE
    count_3 WHEN count= 3 ELSE
    count_lml WHEN count = (0 TO I(octave_cnt_length) -1) ELSE
    count_carry WHEN count = 0 TO I(octave_cnt_length) ELSE
    count_rst;
  count_reset <=
    rst WHEN reset =rst ELSE
    no_rst;
  count_en <= '1' WHEN col_carry = count_carry ELSE
    count_map:COUNT_SYNC_GENERIC MAP(0:1 PORT MAP(rst, count_rst, count_en, count_no_rst);--count always enabled
  --architecture outputs--
  out_1 <=
    count;
  out_2 <= count_control;
END behave;

CONFIGURATION ROW_COUNT_CON OF U_ROW_COUNT IS
  FOR behave
    FOR ALL:COUNT_SYNC
      BND FOR;
    END FOR;
  END ROW_COUNT_CON;
  -- create the rising edge function, and a model of a active high DPP.

use work.DWT_TYPES.all;
use work.util.all;
package diff_package is

```

5  
10  
15  
20  
25  
30  
35  
40  
45  
50  
55

```

FUNCTION rising_edge (SIGNAL e:bit) return bool;

PROCEDURE DP1{
  SIGNAL ck:in bit; SIGNAL d:in integer; SIGNAL q:out integer};

PROCEDURE DP1{
  SIGNAL ck:in bit; SIGNAL d:in t_state; SIGNAL q:out t_state};

PROCEDURE DP1{
  SIGNAL ck:in bit; SIGNAL d:in t_count_control; SIGNAL q:out t_count_control};

PROCEDURE DP1{
  SIGNAL ck:in bit; SIGNAL d:in t_count_2; SIGNAL q:out t_count_2};

PROCEDURE DP1{
  SIGNAL ck:in bit; SIGNAL d:in t_reset; SIGNAL q:out t_reset};

PROCEDURE DP1{
  SIGNAL ck:in bit; SIGNAL d:in t_load; SIGNAL q:out t_load};

PROCEDURE DP1{
  SIGNAL ck:in bit; SIGNAL d:in bit_vector; SIGNAL q:out bit_vector};

PROCEDURE DPP{
  SIGNAL ck:in bit; reset:in t_reset; SIGNAL d:in integer; SIGNAL q:out integer};

PROCEDURE DPP{
  SIGNAL ck:in bit; reset:in t_reset; SIGNAL d:in t_reset; SIGNAL q:out t_reset};

PROCEDURE DPP{
  SIGNAL ck:in bit; reset:in t_reset; SIGNAL d:in t_count_2; SIGNAL q:out t_count_2};

PROCEDURE DPP{
  SIGNAL ck:in bit; reset:in t_reset; SIGNAL d:in t_count_control; SIGNAL q:out t_count_control};

```

5  
10  
15  
20  
25  
30  
35  
40  
45  
50

```

PROCEDURE DFF(
  SIGNAL ck:in bit;reset:in t_reset;SIGNAL d:in bit;SIGNAL q:out bit);

PROCEDURE DPF(
  SIGNAL ck:in bit;reset:in t_reset;SIGNAL d:in t_load;SIGNAL q:out t_load);

PROCEDURE DPP INIT(
  SIGNAL ck:in bit;reset:in t_reset;load:in t_load;SIGNAL d:in integer;SIGNAL q:out integer);

PROCEDURE DPP_INIT(
  SIGNAL ck:in bit;reset:in t_reset;load:in t_load;SIGNAL d:in t_channel;SIGNAL q:out t_channel);

PROCEDURE DPP INIT(
  SIGNAL ck:in bit;reset:in t_reset;load:in t_load;SIGNAL d:in t_diff;SIGNAL q:out t_diff);

PROCEDURE DPP_INIT(
  SIGNAL ck:in bit;reset:in t_reset;load:in t_load;SIGNAL d:in t_mode;SIGNAL q:out t_mode);

PROCEDURE DPP_INIT(
  SIGNAL ck:in bit;reset:in t_reset;load:in t_load;SIGNAL d:in bit;SIGNAL q:out bit);

PROCEDURE DPF_INIT(
  SIGNAL ck:in bit;reset:in t_reset;load:in t_load;SIGNAL d:in BIT_VECTOR;SIGNAL q:out BIT_VECTOR);

PROCEDURE DPP_INIT(
  SIGNAL ck:in bit;reset:in t_reset;load:in t_load;SIGNAL d:in t_high_low;SIGNAL q:out t_high_low);

PROCEDURE LATCH(
  load:in t_load;SIGNAL d:in bit_vector;SIGNAL q:out bit_vector);

PROCEDURE LATCH(
  load:in t_load;SIGNAL d:in bit;SIGNAL q:out bit);

end dff_package;

```

```

5
10
15
20
25
30
35
40
45
50
55

package body diff_package is
  FUNCTION rising_edge ( SIGNAL s:bit) return bool IS
    BEGIN
      IF(s'event) AND (s='1') AND (s'last_value = '0') THEN return t;
      ELSE return f;
    END IF;
  END rising_edge;

--THE DP1 flip-flops, NO RESET-----
PROCEDURE DP1(
  SIGNAL ck:in bit; SIGNAL d:in Integer; SIGNAL q:out Integer) IS
  BEGIN
    IF(rising_edge(ck) = t ) THEN q:=d;
    ELSE null;
  END IF;
  END DP1;

PROCEDURE DP1(CONSTANT n:integer,
  SIGNAL ck:in bit; SIGNAL d:in bit_vector; SIGNAL q:out bit_vector) IS
  BEGIN
    IF(rising_edge(ck) = t ) THEN q:=d;
    ELSE null;
  END IF;
  END DP1;

PROCEDURE DP1(
  SIGNAL ck:in bit; SIGNAL d:in t_state; SIGNAL q:out t_state) IS
  BEGIN
    IF(rising_edge(ck) = t ) THEN q:=d;
    ELSE null;
  END IF;
  END DP1;

PROCEDURE DP1(
  SIGNAL ck:in bit; SIGNAL d:in t_load; SIGNAL q:out t_load) IS

```

5

10

15

20

25

30

35

40

45

50

55

```
BEGIN
IF(rising_edge(ck) = t ) THEN q<=d;
ELSE null;
END IF;
END DFL;
```

```
PROCEDURE DF1(
SIGNAL ck:in bit;SIGNAL d:in t_count;SIGNAL q:out t_out t_reset) IS
BEGIN
IF(rising_edge(ck) = t ) THEN q=d;
ELSE null;
END IF;
END DF1;
```

```
PROCEDURE DF1(
SIGNAL ck:in bit;SIGNAL d:in t_count_2;SIGNAL q:out t_out t_count_2) IS
BEGIN
IF(rising_edge(ck) = t ) THEN q=d;
ELSE null;
END IF;
END DF1;
```

```
PROCEDURE DF1(
SIGNAL ck:in bit;SIGNAL d:in bit;SIGNAL q:out bit) IS
BEGIN
IF(rising_edge(ck) = t ) THEN q=d;
ELSE null;
END IF;
END DF1;
```

```
PROCEDURE DF1(
SIGNAL ck:in bit;SIGNAL d:in t_count_control;SIGNAL q:out t_out t_count_control) IS
BEGIN
IF(rising_edge(ck) = t ) THEN q=d;
ELSE null;
```

```

5
END IF;
END DFF;

```

```

--THE DFF flip-flops, with RESET-----
PROCEDURE DFF(
  SIGNAL ck:in bit;reset:in t_reset;SIGNAL d:in integer;SIGNAL q:out integer) IS
BEGIN
  IP reset=ret THEN q<= 0;
  ELSIF(rising_edge(ck) = t ) THEN q<=d;
  --IP(rising_edge(ck) = t ) THEN IF reset=ret THEN q<= 0;
  ELSE null;
  END IF;
  END DFF;

```

```

10
15
20
25
30
35
40
45
50

```

```

PROCEDURE DFP(
  SIGNAL ck:in bit;reset:in t_reset;SIGNAL d:in t_reset;SIGNAL q:out t_reset) IS
BEGIN
  IP reset=ret THEN q<= ret;
  ELSIF(rising_edge(ck) = t ) THEN q<=d;
  ELSE null;
  END IP;
  END DFP;

PROCEDURE DFP(
  SIGNAL ck:in bit;reset:in t_reset;SIGNAL d:in bit;SIGNAL q:out bit) IS
BEGIN
  IF reset=ret THEN q<= '0';
  ELSIF(rising_edge(ck) = t ) THEN q<=d;
  ELSE null;
  END IF;
  END DFP;

PROCEDURE DPP(

```

5  
10  
15  
20  
25  
30  
35  
40  
45

```

SIGNAL ck:in bit;reset:in t_reset;SIGNAL d:in t_load;SIGNAL q:out t_load) IS
BEGIN
  IP reset=rat THEN q<= read;
  ELSIF(rising_edge(ck) = t ) THEN q<=d;
  ELSE null;
END IP;
END DFF;

PROCEDURE DFF(
  SIGNAL ck:in bit;reset:in t_reset;SIGNAL d:in t_count_2;SIGNAL q:out t_count_2) IS
BEGIN
  IF reset=rat THEN q<= one;
  ELSIF(rising_edge(ck) = t ) THEN q<=d;
  ELSE null;
END IP;
END DFF;
PROCEDURE DFF(
  SIGNAL ck:in bit;reset:in t_reset;SIGNAL d:in t_count_control;SIGNAL q:out t_count_control) IS
BEGIN
  IP reset=rat THEN q<= count_0;
  ELSIF(rising_edge(ck) = t ) THEN q<=d;
  ELSE null;
END IP;
END DFF;

---- THE DFF_INIT FLIP-FLOOPS

PROCEDURE DFF_INIT(
  SIGNAL ck:in bit;reset:in t_reset;load:in t_load;SIGNAL d:in integer;SIGNAL q:out integer) IS
BEGIN
  IF reset=rat THEN q<= 0;
  ELSIF load=write THEN IF(rising_edge(ck) = t ) THEN q<=d;
  ELSE null;
END IP;
END DFF_INIT;

```

50

55

5            10            15            20            25            30            35

```

PROCEDURE DFF_INIT(
  SIGNAL ck:in_bit;reset:in t_reset;load:in t_load;SIGNAL d:in bit;SIGNAL q:out bit) IS
BEGIN
  q<= '0';
  IF reset=reset THEN q<= '0';
  ELSIF load=write THEN IF(rising_edge(ck) = t ) THEN q<=d;
  ELSE null;
  END IF;
  END IF;
END DFF_INIT;

PROCEDURE DFF_INIT(
  SIGNAL ck:in_bit;reset:in t_reset;load:in t_load;SIGNAL d:in t_high_low;SIGNAL q:out t_high_low) IS
BEGIN
  q<= low;
  IF reset=reset THEN q<= low;
  ELSIF load=write THEN IF(rising_edge(ck) = t ) THEN q<=d;
  ELSE null;
  END IF;
  END IF;
END DFF_INIT;

PROCEDURE DFF_INIT(
  SIGNAL ck:in_bit;reset:in t_reset;load:in t_load;SIGNAL d:in t_channel;SIGNAL q:out t_channel) IS
BEGIN
  q<= Y;
  IF reset=reset THEN q<= Y;
  ELSIF load=write THEN IF(rising_edge(ck) = t ) THEN q<=d;
  ELSE null;
  END IF;
  END IF;
END DFF_INIT;

PROCEDURE DFF_INIT(
  SIGNAL ck:in_bit;reset:in t_reset;load:in t_load;SIGNAL d:in t_mode;SIGNAL q:out t_mode) IS
BEGIN
  q<= still;
  IF reset=reset THEN q<= still;
  ELSIF load=write THEN IF(rising_edge(ck) = t ) THEN q<=d;
  ELSE null;
  END IF;
  END IF;
END DFF_INIT;

```

5

10

15

20

25

30

35

40

45

50

55

```

      ELSE null;
      END IF;
    END DPP_INIT;

PROCEDURE DPP_INIT(
  SIGNAL ck:in bit;reset:in t_reset;load:in t_load;SIGNAL d:in t_diff;SIGNAL q:out t_diff) IS
BEGIN
  IF reset=rst THEN q<= nodiff;
  ELSIF load=write THEN IP(rising_edge(ck) = t ) THEN q<=d;
  ELSE null;
  END IF;
END DPP_INIT;

PROCEDURE DPP_INIT(
  SIGNAL ck:in bit;reset:in t_reset;load:in t_load;SIGNAL d:in BIT_VECTOR;SIGNAL q:out BIT_VECTOR) IS
BEGIN
  IF reset=rst THEN q<= ZERO(d'length);
  ELSIF load=write THEN IP(rising_edge(ck) = t ) THEN q<=d;
  ELSE null;
  END IF;
END IF;
END DPP_INIT;

PROCEDURE LATCH(
  load:in t_load;SIGNAL d:in bit_vector;SIGNAL q:out bit_vector) IS
BEGIN
  IP load=write THEN q<=d;
  ELSE null;
  END IF;
END LATCH;

PROCEDURE LATCH(
  load:in t_load;SIGNAL d:in bit;SIGNAL q:out bit) IS
BEGIN

```

5

10

15

20

25

30

35

45

50

55

```

IF load=write THEN q<=d;
ELSE null;
END IF;
END LATCH;

end behave;

END dff_package;
--the discrete wavelet transform multi-octave/2d transform with edge compensation--
--when ext & cst are both low latch the setup params from the nubus(active low), as follows--
--adl[1 to 4] select function--
-- 0000 load max_octaves,colour,inversabar--
-- 0001 load yimage--
-- 0010 load ximage--
--jump table values--
-- 0011 load ximage+1--
-- 0100 load xximage+3--
-- 0101 load 7ximage+7--
-- 0110 load base u addr--
-- 0111 load base v addr--
--adl[21 to 22] max octaves--
--adl[23] luminance/crominancebar active low, 0 is luminance, 1 is colour--
--adl[24] forward/inversabar active low, 0 is forward, 1 is inverse--
--adl[5 to 24] data (bit 24 1sb)--

use WORK.dwt_types.all;
use WORK.util.all;
use WORK.util_dwt.all;
use WORK.dff_package.all;

entity U_DWT IS
PORT(
  ck : in bit ;
  reset : in t_reset ;
  in_in : in t_input ;
  extwrite,cst: in bit ;

```

5

10

15

20

30

35

40

45

50

55

```

      ad1 : in BIT_VECTOR(1 to 24) ,
      mem : in t_input ,
      pdel_in : in t_scratch_array(1 to 4) ,
      out_1 : out t_input ,
      out_2 : out t_load_array(1 to 3) ,
      out_3 : out t_load_array(1 to 3) ,
      out_4_1 : out t_memory_addr , -- memory port
      out_4_2 : out t_memory_addr ,
      out_4_3 : out t_load ,
      out_5_1 : out t_scratch_array(1 to 4) , -- line delay port
      out_5_2 : out t_col ,
      out_5_3 : out t_col ,
      end U_DWT,
```

architecture behave of U\_DWT is  
COMPONENT JKPP  
PORT(

ck : in bit ,  
reset : in t\_reset ,  
j:in bit ,  
out\_1:out bit);

end COMPONENT;  
COMPONENT U\_CONV\_2D  
PORT(

ck : in bit ,  
reset : in t\_reset ,  
in\_in : in t\_input ,  
direction : in t\_direction ,  
pdel : in t\_scratch\_array(1 to 4) ,

```

5
10
15
20
25
30
35
40
45
50
55

conv_reset : in t_reset ,
row_flag : in t_count_control ,
addr_col_read_1 : in t_col ;
addr_col_read_2 : in t_count_control ,
out_1 : out t_input ,
out_2_1 : out t_scratch_array(1 to 4) ;
out_2_2 : out t_col ;
out_2_3 : out t_col ;
out_3 : out t_count_control ;
out_4 : out t_count_control ;
out_5 : out t_count_control ;
end COMPONENT;

COMPONENT U_ADDR_GEN
PORT(
  ck : in bit ,
  reset : in t_reset ,
  direction : in t_direction ,
  channel : in t_channel ,
  x_p_1 : in BIT_VECTOR(1 to 10) ;
  x3_p_1 : in BIT_VECTOR(1 to 12) ;
  x7_p_1 : in BIT_VECTOR(1 to 13) ;
  octave_row_length : in BIT_VECTOR(1 to ysize) ,
  octave_col_length : in BIT_VECTOR(1 to xsize) ,
  octave_reset : in t_reset ,
  octave : in t_octave ,
  y_done : in bit ,
  uv_done : in bit ,
  octave_finished : in t_load ;
  base_u,base_v : in BIT_VECTOR(1 to 19) ;
  out_1 : out t_input_mux) --> input data from memory/external
out_2_1 : out t_memory_addr) --> memory port
out_2_2 : out t_memory_addr;
out_2_3 : out t_load;

```

5

10

15

20

25

30

45

50

55

```

out_3_1 : out t_load; --dwt ln control
out_3_2 : out t3cs;

out_4 : out t_load; --IDWT data valid
out_5 : out t_load; --read_valid
out_6 : out t_count_control; --row read
out_7_1 : out t_col;
out_7_2 : out t_count_control;
end COMPONENT;

signal max_oct:t_octave;
signal max_oct_str:BIT_VECTOR(1 to 2);
signal col_length:BIT_VECTOR(1 to 10);
signal row_length:BIT_VECTOR(1 to 10);
signal channel_factor_st:BIT;
signal channel_factor_it:channel_factor;
signal direction_it_direction;
signal dirbit;
signal convcol_row:t_count_control;
signal convcol_col:t_count_control;
signal convrow_col:t_count_control;
signal conv_2d_1:t_input;
signal conv_2d_2_1:t_scratch_array(1 to 4);
signal conv_2d_2_2:t_col;
signal conv_2d_2_3:t_col;
signal conv_2d_3:t_count_control;
signal conv_2d_4:t_count_control;
signal conv_2d_5:t_count_control;
signal octave:t_octave;
signal channel:t_channel;
signal octave_finished:t_load;
signal load_octave:t_load;
signal max_oct_1:t_octave;
signal y_done:bit;

```

5

10

15

20

25

30

35

40

50

55

```

signal uv_done:bit;
signal all_one:bit;
15
signal octave_sel:bit;
signal octave_row_length:BIT_VECTOR(1 to ysize);

signal conv_reset:reset;
signal octave_col_length:BIT_VECTOR(1 to xsize);

signal input_mux:t_input_mux;
signal addr_gen_1:t_input_mux;
signal addr_gen_2:1bit_memory_addr;
signal addr_gen_2_2:2bit_memory_addr;
signal addr_gen_2_3:3bit_load;
signal addr_gen_3:3bit_load;
signal addr_gen_3_2:t_cs;
signal addr_gen_4:t_load;
signal addr_gen_5:t_load;
signal addr_gen_6:t_count_control;
signal addr_gen_7:1bit_col;
signal addr_gen_7_2:t_count_control;
signal mem_rw:t_load;
signal mem_r:t_memory_addr;
signal mem_w:t_memory_addr;

signal q:bit;
signal inverse_out:t_load_array(1 to 3);
signal forward_init_load_array(1 to 3);

signal decode:Int:natural;
signal decode:BIT_VECTOR(1 to 8);
signal x_p1:BIT_VECTOR(1 to 10);
signal x3_p1:BIT_VECTOR(1 to 12);
signal x7_p1:BIT_VECTOR(1 to 13);
signal base_u:BIT_VECTOR(1 to 19);
signal base_v:BIT_VECTOR(1 to 19);
signal ad14_2:BIT_VECTOR(1 to 3);

```

5

10

15

20

25

30

40

45

50

55

```

signal load_regs:BIT_VECTOR(1 to 8);
signal conv_init_input;
signal row_bit:bit;
signal row_carry_ff:bit;
signal initial_octave_st:octave;
signal initial_channel_st:channel;
signal max_octave_st:BIT_VECTOR(1 to 2);

BEGIN
  --must delay the write control to match the data output of conv_2d, ie by conv2d_latency--
  --set up the control params--
  max_oct    <= U_TO_I(max_octave_st);
  WITH channel_factor_st SELECT
    channel_factor <= luminance WHEN '0',
                                color_WHBN '1',
                                color_WBBN '1';

  WITH dir SELECT
    direction <= forward WHEN '0',
                           inverse WHEN '1';

  --set up the octave params--
  convcol_row <= conv_2d_3;
  convcol_col <= conv_2d_4;
  convrow_col <= conv_2d_5;
  --signals that conv_col, for forward, or conv_row, for inverse, has finished that octave--
  --and selects the next octave value and the sub-image size--
  --row then col, gives write latency
  octave_finished <= write_latency WHEN direction = forward AND convcol_row = count_2 AND convcol_col = count_2
  --extra row as col then row
  ELSE
    WHILE direction = inverse AND row_carry_ff = '1' AND convcol_row = count_2 AND convrow_col = count_1
    ELSE

```

5  
10  
15  
20  
25  
30  
35  
40  
45  
50

```

read;

--max octaves {for u|v---
WITH max_oct SELECT
max_oct_1 <= 0 WHEN
          0 WHEN
          1 WHEN
          2 '
          3 ;
y_done <= '1' WHEN channel = y AND direction = forward AND octave = max_oct
ELSE
          '1' WHEN channel = y AND direction = inverse AND octave = 0 ELSE
          '0';

uv_done <= '1' WHEN channel = u AND direction = forward AND octave = max_oct_1 ELSE
          '1' WHEN channel = v AND direction = forward AND octave = max_oct_1 ELSE
          '1' WHEN channel = u AND direction = inverse AND octave = max_oct_1 ELSE
          '1' WHEN channel = v AND direction = inverse AND octave = 0 ELSE
          '0';

PROCESS(octave,channel,ck,load_octave)
variable new_oct :t_octave;
variable new_channel :t_channel;
BEGIN
new_oct :=octave;
new_channel := channel;

-- first describe the progression of the octaves for a max_oct decomposition
CASE direction IS
WHEN forward => CASE octave IS
WHEN 0 => new_oct :=1;
WHEN 1 => new_oct :=2 ;
WHEN 2:3 => new_oct :=3 ;
END CASE;
IP y_done = '1' OR uv_done = '1' THEN new_oct :=0; ELSE null;
WHEN inverse => CASE octave IS
END IP;
```

55

5

10

15

20

25

30

45

46

50

55

```

WHEN 3 => new_oct :=2;
WHEN 2 => new_oct :=1 ;
WHEN 1|0 => new_oct :=0 ;
END CASE;

CASE channel IS
  WHEN y => CASE octave IS
    WHEN 0 => CASE channel_factor IS
      WHEN luminance => new_oct:=max_oct; --watch for colour
      WHEN OTHERS => new_oct:=max_oct_1;
    END CASE;
    WHEN OTHERS => null;
  END CASE;
  WHEN u =>CASE octave IS
    WHEN 0 => new_oct:=max_oct_1;
    WHEN OTHERS => null;
  END CASE;
  WHEN v =>CASE octave IS
    WHEN 0 => new_oct:=max_oct; --move to y
    WHEN OTHERS => null;
  END CASE;
END CASE;

--the progression of channels is first y then u then v
CASE channel_factor IS
  WHEN luminance => new_channel := y ;
  WHEN color => IF channel = y AND y_done =1 THEN new_channel := u; ELSE null; END IF;
END CASE;

-- get initial values for octave and channel after reset
CASE reset IS
  WHEN no_reset => initial_octave<=new_oct;

```

```

      5
      6
      7
      8
      9
      10
      11
      12
      13
      14
      15
      16
      17
      18
      19
      20
      21
      22
      23
      24
      25
      26
      27
      28
      29
      30
      31
      32
      33
      34
      35
      36
      37
      38
      39
      40
      41
      42
      43
      44
      45
      46
      47
      48
      49
      50
      51
      52
      53
      54
      55
      56
      57
      58
      59
      60
      61
      62
      63
      64
      65
      66
      67
      68
      69
      70
      71
      72
      73
      74
      75
      76
      77
      78
      79
      80
      81
      82
      83
      84
      85
      86
      87
      88
      89
      90
      91
      92
      93
      94
      95
      96
      97
      98
      99
      100
      101
      102
      103
      104
      105
      106
      107
      108
      109
      110
      111
      112
      113
      114
      115
      116
      117
      118
      119
      120
      121
      122
      123
      124
      125
      126
      127
      128
      129
      130
      131
      132
      133
      134
      135
      136
      137
      138
      139
      140
      141
      142
      143
      144
      145
      146
      147
      148
      149
      150
      151
      152
      153
      154
      155
      156
      157
      158
      159
      160
      161
      162
      163
      164
      165
      166
      167
      168
      169
      170
      171
      172
      173
      174
      175
      176
      177
      178
      179
      180
      181
      182
      183
      184
      185
      186
      187
      188
      189
      190
      191
      192
      193
      194
      195
      196
      197
      198
      199
      200
      201
      202
      203
      204
      205
      206
      207
      208
      209
      210
      211
      212
      213
      214
      215
      216
      217
      218
      219
      220
      221
      222
      223
      224
      225
      226
      227
      228
      229
      230
      231
      232
      233
      234
      235
      236
      237
      238
      239
      240
      241
      242
      243
      244
      245
      246
      247
      248
      249
      250
      251
      252
      253
      254
      255
      256
      257
      258
      259
      260
      261
      262
      263
      264
      265
      266
      267
      268
      269
      270
      271
      272
      273
      274
      275
      276
      277
      278
      279
      280
      281
      282
      283
      284
      285
      286
      287
      288
      289
      290
      291
      292
      293
      294
      295
      296
      297
      298
      299
      300
      301
      302
      303
      304
      305
      306
      307
      308
      309
      310
      311
      312
      313
      314
      315
      316
      317
      318
      319
      320
      321
      322
      323
      324
      325
      326
      327
      328
      329
      330
      331
      332
      333
      334
      335
      336
      337
      338
      339
      340
      341
      342
      343
      344
      345
      346
      347
      348
      349
      350
      351
      352
      353
      354
      355
      356
      357
      358
      359
      360
      361
      362
      363
      364
      365
      366
      367
      368
      369
      370
      371
      372
      373
      374
      375
      376
      377
      378
      379
      380
      381
      382
      383
      384
      385
      386
      387
      388
      389
      390
      391
      392
      393
      394
      395
      396
      397
      398
      399
      400
      401
      402
      403
      404
      405
      406
      407
      408
      409
      410
      411
      412
      413
      414
      415
      416
      417
      418
      419
      420
      421
      422
      423
      424
      425
      426
      427
      428
      429
      430
      431
      432
      433
      434
      435
      436
      437
      438
      439
      440
      441
      442
      443
      444
      445
      446
      447
      448
      449
      450
      451
      452
      453
      454
      455
      456
      457
      458
      459
      460
      461
      462
      463
      464
      465
      466
      467
      468
      469
      470
      471
      472
      473
      474
      475
      476
      477
      478
      479
      480
      481
      482
      483
      484
      485
      486
      487
      488
      489
      490
      491
      492
      493
      494
      495
      496
      497
      498
      499
      500
      501
      502
      503
      504
      505
      506
      507
      508
      509
      510
      511
      512
      513
      514
      515
      516
      517
      518
      519
      520
      521
      522
      523
      524
      525
      526
      527
      528
      529
      530
      531
      532
      533
      534
      535
      536
      537
      538
      539
      540
      541
      542
      543
      544
      545
      546
      547
      548
      549
      550
      551
      552
      553
      554
      555
      556
      557
      558
      559
      560
      561
      562
      563
      564
      565
      566
      567
      568
      569
      570
      571
      572
      573
      574
      575
      576
      577
      578
      579
      580
      581
      582
      583
      584
      585
      586
      587
      588
      589
      590
      591
      592
      593
      594
      595
      596
      597
      598
      599
      600
      601
      602
      603
      604
      605
      606
      607
      608
      609
      610
      611
      612
      613
      614
      615
      616
      617
      618
      619
      620
      621
      622
      623
      624
      625
      626
      627
      628
      629
      630
      631
      632
      633
      634
      635
      636
      637
      638
      639
      640
      641
      642
      643
      644
      645
      646
      647
      648
      649
      650
      651
      652
      653
      654
      655
      656
      657
      658
      659
      660
      661
      662
      663
      664
      665
      666
      667
      668
      669
      670
      671
      672
      673
      674
      675
      676
      677
      678
      679
      680
      681
      682
      683
      684
      685
      686
      687
      688
      689
      690
      691
      692
      693
      694
      695
      696
      697
      698
      699
      700
      701
      702
      703
      704
      705
      706
      707
      708
      709
      710
      711
      712
      713
      714
      715
      716
      717
      718
      719
      720
      721
      722
      723
      724
      725
      726
      727
      728
      729
      730
      731
      732
      733
      734
      735
      736
      737
      738
      739
      740
      741
      742
      743
      744
      745
      746
      747
      748
      749
      750
      751
      752
      753
      754
      755
      756
      757
      758
      759
      760
      761
      762
      763
      764
      765
      766
      767
      768
      769
      770
      771
      772
      773
      774
      775
      776
      777
      778
      779
      780
      781
      782
      783
      784
      785
      786
      787
      788
      789
      790
      791
      792
      793
      794
      795
      796
      797
      798
      799
      800
      801
      802
      803
      804
      805
      806
      807
      808
      809
      810
      811
      812
      813
      814
      815
      816
      817
      818
      819
      820
      821
      822
      823
      824
      825
      826
      827
      828
      829
      830
      831
      832
      833
      834
      835
      836
      837
      838
      839
      840
      841
      842
      843
      844
      845
      846
      847
      848
      849
      850
      851
      852
      853
      854
      855
      856
      857
      858
      859
      860
      861
      862
      863
      864
      865
      866
      867
      868
      869
      870
      871
      872
      873
      874
      875
      876
      877
      878
      879
      880
      881
      882
      883
      884
      885
      886
      887
      888
      889
      890
      891
      892
      893
      894
      895
      896
      897
      898
      899
      900
      901
      902
      903
      904
      905
      906
      907
      908
      909
      910
      911
      912
      913
      914
      915
      916
      917
      918
      919
      920
      921
      922
      923
      924
      925
      926
      927
      928
      929
      930
      931
      932
      933
      934
      935
      936
      937
      938
      939
      940
      941
      942
      943
      944
      945
      946
      947
      948
      949
      950
      951
      952
      953
      954
      955
      956
      957
      958
      959
      960
      961
      962
      963
      964
      965
      966
      967
      968
      969
      970
      971
      972
      973
      974
      975
      976
      977
      978
      979
      980
      981
      982
      983
      984
      985
      986
      987
      988
      989
      990
      991
      992
      993
      994
      995
      996
      997
      998
      999
      1000
      1001
      1002
      1003
      1004
      1005
      1006
      1007
      1008
      1009
      1010
      1011
      1012
      1013
      1014
      1015
      1016
      1017
      1018
      1019
      1020
      1021
      1022
      1023
      1024
      1025
      1026
      1027
      1028
      1029
      1030
      1031
      1032
      1033
      1034
      1035
      1036
      1037
      1038
      1039
      1040
      1041
      1042
      1043
      1044
      1045
      1046
      1047
      1048
      1049
      1050
      1051
      1052
      1053
      1054
      1055
      1056
      1057
      1058
      1059
      1060
      1061
      1062
      1063
      1064
      1065
      1066
      1067
      1068
      1069
      1070
      1071
      1072
      1073
      1074
      1075
      1076
      1077
      1078
      1079
      1080
      1081
      1082
      1083
      1084
      1085
      1086
      1087
      1088
      1089
      1090
      1091
      1092
      1093
      1094
      1095
      1096
      1097
      1098
      1099
      1100
      1101
      1102
      1103
      1104
      1105
      1106
      1107
      1108
      1109
      1110
      1111
      1112
      1113
      1114
      1115
      1116
      1117
      1118
      1119
      1120
      1121
      1122
      1123
      1124
      1125
      1126
      1127
      1128
      1129
      1130
      1131
      1132
      1133
      1134
      1135
      1136
      1137
      1138
      1139
      1140
      1141
      1142
      1143
      1144
      1145
      1146
      1147
      1148
      1149
      1150
      1151
      1152
      1153
      1154
      1155
      1156
      1157
      1158
      1159
      1160
      1161
      1162
      1163
      1164
      1165
      1166
      1167
      1168
      1169
      1170
      1171
      1172
      1173
      1174
      1175
      1176
      1177
      1178
      1179
      1180
      1181
      1182
      1183
      1184
      1185
      1186
      1187
      1188
      1189
      1190
      1191
      1192
      1193
      1194
      1195
      1196
      1197
      1198
      1199
      1200
      1201
      1202
      1203
      1204
      1205
      1206
      1207
      1208
      1209
      1210
      1211
      1212
      1213
      1214
      1215
      1216
      1217
      1218
      1219
      1220
      1221
      1222
      1223
      1224
      1225
      1226
      1227
      1228
      1229
      1230
      1231
      1232
      1233
      1234
      1235
      1236
      1237
      1238
      1239
      1240
      1241
      1242
      1243
      1244
      1245
      1246
      1247
      1248
      1249
      1250
      1251
      1252
      1253
      1254
      1255
      1256
      1257
      1258
      1259
      1260
      1261
      1262
      1263
      1264
      1265
      1266
      1267
      1268
      1269
      1270
      1271
      1272
      1273
      1274
      1275
      1276
      1277
      1278
      1279
      1280
      1281
      1282
      1283
      1284
      1285
      1286
      1287
      1288
      1289
      1290
      1291
      1292
      1293
      1294
      1295
      1296
      1297
      1298
      1299
      1300
      1301
      1302
      1303
      1304
      1305
      1306
      1307
      1308
      1309
      1310
      1311
      1312
      1313
      1314
      1315
      1316
      1317
      1318
      1319
      1320
      1321
      1322
      1323
      1324
      1325
      1326
      1327
      1328
      1329
      1330
      1331
      1332
      1333
      1334
      1335
      1336
      1337
      1338
      1339
      1340
      1341
      1342
      1343
      1344
      1345
      1346
      1347
      1348
      1349
      1350
      1351
      1352
      1353
      1354
      1355
      1356
      1357
      1358
      1359
      1360
      1361
      1362
      1363
      1364
      1365
      1366
      1367
      1368
      1369
      1370
      1371
      1372
      1373
      1374
      1375
      1376
      1377
      1378
      1379
      1380
      1381
      1382
      1383
      1384
      1385
      1386
      1387
      1388
      1389
      1390
      1391
      1392
      1393
      1394
      1395
      1396
      1397
      1398
      1399
      1400
      1401
      1402
      1403
      1404
      1405
      1406
      1407
      1408
      1409
      1410
      1411
      1412
      1413
      1414
      1415
      1416
      1417
      1418
      1419
      1420
      1421
      1422
      1423
      1424
      1425
      1426
      1427
      1428
      1429
      1430
      1431
      1432
      1433
      1434
      1435
      1436
      1437
      1438
      1439
      1440
      1441
      1442
      1443
      1444
      1445
      1446
      1447
      1448
      1449
      1450
      1451
      1452
      1453
      1454
      1455
      1456
      1457
      1458
      1459
      1460
      1461
      1462
      1463
      1464
      1465
      1466
      1467
      1468
      1469
      1470
      1471
      1472
      1473
      1474
      1475
      1476
      1477
      1478
      1479
      1480
      1481
      1482
      1483
      1484
      1485
      1486
      1487
      1488
      1489
      1490
      1491
      1492
      1493
      1494
      1495
      1496
      1497
      1498
      1499
      1500
      1501
      1502
      1503
      1504
      1505
      1506
      1507
      1508
      1509
      1510
      1511
      1512
      1513
      1514
      1515
      1516
      1517
      1518
      1519
      1520
      1521
      1522
      1523
      1524
      1525
      1526
      1527
      1528
      1529
      1530
      1531
      1532
      1533
      1534
      1535
      1536
      1537
      1538
      1539
      1540
      1541
      1542
      1543
      1544
      1545
      1546
      1547
      1548
      1549
      1550
      1551
      1552
      1553
      1554
      1555
      1556
      1557
      1558
      1559
      1560
      1561
      1562
      1563
      1564
      1565
      1566
      1567
      1568
      1569
      1570
      1571
      1572
      1573
      1574
      1575
      1576
      1577
      1578
      1579
      1580
      1581
      1582
      1583
      1584
      1585
      1586
      1587
      1588
      1589
      1590
      1591
      1592
      1593
      1594
      1595
      1596
      1597
      1598
      1599
      1600
      1601
      1602
      1603
      1604
      1605
      1606
      1607
      1608
      1609
      1610
      1611
      1612
      1613
      1614
      1615
      1616
      1617
      1618
      1619
      1620
      1621
      1622
      1623
      1624
      1625
      1626
      1627
      1628
      1629
      1630
      1631
      1632
      1633
      1634
      1635
      1636
      1637
      1638
      1639
      1640
      1641
      1642
      1643
      1644
      1645
      1646
      1647
      1648
      1649
      1650
      1651
      1652
      1653
      1654
      1655
      1656
      1657
      1658
      1659
      1660
      1661
      1662
      1663
      1664
      1665
      1666
      1667
      1668
      1669
      1670
      1671
      1672
      1673
      1674
      1675
      1676
      1677
      1678
      1679
      1680
      1681
      1682
      1683
      1684
      1685
      1686
      1687
      1688
      1689
      1690
      1691
      1692
      1693
      1694
      1695
      1696
      1697
      1698
      1699
      1700
      1701
      1702
      1703
      1704
      1705
      1706
      1707
      1708
      1709
      1710
      1711
      1712
      1713
      1714
      1715
      1716
      1717
      1718
      1719
      1720
      1721
      1722
      1723
      1724
      1725
      1726
      1727
      1728
      1729
      1730
      1731
      1732
      1733
      1734
      1735
      1736
      1737
      1738
      1739
      1740
      1741
      1742
      1743
      1744
      1745
      1746
      1747
      1748
      1749
      1750
      1751
      1752
      1753
      1754
      1755
      1756
      1757
      1758
      1759
      1760
      1761
      1762
      1763
      1764
      1765
      1766
      1767
      1768
      1769
      1770
      1771
      1772
      1773
      1774
      1775
      1776
      1777
      1778
```

5

10

15

20

25

30

35

40

45

50

55

```

--load next octave, either on system reset, or write finished--
WITH reset SELECT
load_octave <= write WHEN rst ,
octave_finished WHEN OTHERS;

--reset the convolvers at the end of an octave, ready for the next octave--
--latch pulse to clean it, note 2 reset pulses at frame start--
--FOR SYNC RESET DONT NEED TO LATCH PULSE
--cant glitch as reset/octave_finished dont change at similar times--

conv_reset <= rst WHEN reset = rst ELSE
rst WHEN octave_finished = write ELSE
no_rst;

--latch control data off nubus
q1 <= '1' WHEN extwritel = '1' AND qsl = '1';
ELSE '0';

mem_w <= addr_gen_2_1; --write addresses--
mem_r <= addr_gen_2_2; --read addresses--
mem_rw <= addr_gen_2_3;

inverse_out <= (write,read,read) WHEN direction=inverse AND octave=0 AND channel=y AND addr_gen_4=write ELSE
(read,write,read) WHEN direction=inverse AND octave=0 AND channel=u AND addr_gen_4=write ELSE
(read,read,write) WHEN direction=inverse AND octave=0 AND channel=v AND addr_gen_4=write ELSE
(read,read,read);

forward_in <= (read,write,write) WHEN direction=forward AND octave=0 AND channel=y AND addr_gen_5=read ELSE
(write,read,write) WHEN direction=forward AND octave=0 AND channel=u AND addr_gen_5=read ELSE
(write,write,read) WHEN direction=forward AND octave=0 AND channel=v AND addr_gen_5=read ELSE
(write,write,write);

```

--the control section latch values when read from the NUBUS  
--a 3x8 decoder, active high outputs select the latched signal for the appropriate register

```

      5
      10
      15
      20
      25
      30
      35
      40
      45
      50
      55

ad14_2 <= (ad1(2),ad1(3),ad1(4));

decode_int <= '0';
      1 WHEN ad14_2 = "000" ELSE
      2 WHEN ad14_2 = "001" BLSB
      4 WHEN ad14_2 = "010" RLSE
      8 WHEN ad14_2 = "011" ELSB
     16 WHEN ad14_2 = "100" BLSB
    32 WHEN ad14_2 = "101" ELSB
     64 WHEN ad14_2 = "110" BLSB
    128 ;

I_TO_S(decode_int, decode);

load_regs <= ALL_SAME(0,91) AND decode;

DFF_INIT(ck,no_rst,BIT_LOAD(load_regs(8)),ad1(21 to 22),max_octave_st);
DFF_INIT(ck,no_rst,BIT_LOAD(load_regs(8)),ad1(21 to 22),max_octave_st);
DFF_INIT(ck,no_rst,BIT_LOAD(load_regs(8)),ad1(23),channel_factor_st);

DFF_INIT(ck,no_rst,BIT_LOAD(load_regs(7)),ad1(15 to 24),col_length);
DFF_INIT(ck,no_rst,BIT_LOAD(load_regs(6)),ad1(16 to 24),row_length);
DFF_INIT(ck,no_rst,BIT_LOAD(load_regs(5)),ad1(15 to 24),x_p1);

DFF_INIT(ck,no_rst,BIT_LOAD(load_regs(4)),ad1(13 to 24),x3_p1);

DFF_INIT(ck,no_rst,BIT_LOAD(load_regs(3)),ad1(12 to 24),x7_p1);

DFF_INIT(ck,no_rst,BIT_LOAD(load_regs(2)),ad1(6 to 24),base_u);
DFF_INIT(ck,no_rst,BIT_LOAD(load_regs(1)),ad1(6 to 24),base_v);

--sets a flag when row counter moves onto next frame
WITH convcol_row SELECT
  row_bit <= '1' WHEN count_carry,
                           '0' WHEN OTHERS,
  all_one <='1';

      106

```

55

8           6           8           36           38           20           15  
 10           12           14           16           18           22           24           26

```

tag_map:JKRP PORT MAP(ck,conv_reset,conv_blt,row_carry_ff);
addr_map:U_ADDRGEN PORT
MAP(ck,reset,direction,channel,x_p_1,xj_p_1,x7_p_1,octave_row_length,octave_col_length,
    conv_reset,octave_y_done,uv_dones,octave_finished,base_u,base_v,
    addr_gen_1, addr_gen_2_1, addr_gen_2_2, addr_gen_2_3, addr_gen_3_1, addr_gen_3_2, addr_gen_4,
    addr_gen_5, addr_gen_6, addr_gen_7_1, addr_gen_7_2);

WITH addr_gen_1 SELRCF
conv_in <=ln_in WHEN dcl_in,
mem WHEN mem_in;

conv_map:U CONV_2D PORT MAP(ck,reset,conv_in,direction,pdel_in,
    conv_reset,addr_gen_6,addr_gen_7_1,addr_gen_7_2,
    conv_2d_1, conv_2d_2_1, conv_2d_2_2, conv_2d_2_3, conv_2d_3, conv_2d_4, conv_2d_5);

--architecture outputs--
out_1 <= conv_2d_1;
out_2 <= Inverse_out;
out_3 <= forward_in;

out_4_1 <= addr_gen_2_1;
out_4_2 <=addr_gen_2_2;
out_4_3 <=addr_gen_2_3;

out_5_1 <=conv_2d_2_1;
out_5_2 <=conv_2d_2_2;
out_5_3 <=conv_2d_2_3;

END;

```

CONFIGURATION DNT\_CON OF U\_DMT IS

```

5
10
15
20
25
30
35
40
45
50
55

FOR behave
  FOR ALL:U_CONV_2D      USE ENTITY WORK.U_CONV_2D(behave);
  END FOR;
  FOR ALL:U_ADDR_GEN      USE ENTITY WORK.U_ADDR_GBN(behave);
  END FOR;
  FOR ALL:JKPF      USE ENTITY WORK.JKPF(behave);
  END FOR;

END FOR;
END DWT CON;
package dut_types is
--constant values
constant result_exp:Integer:= 14;
--length of result arith
constant input_exp:Integer:= 10;
--length of 1D convolver input/output---
constant qmax :Integer:= 7;
--maximum shift value for quantisation constant---
constant result_range:Integer:= 2 ** (result_exp-1);
constant input_range:Integer:= 2 ** (input_exp-1);
constant max_octave:Integer:= 3;
--no of octaves:Integer:=max_octave +1; can not be less in this example---
constant no_octave:Integer:=max_octave +1;
constant xsize :Integer:= max_octave+1;
constant ysize :Integer:= 10;
--no of bits for ximage--
constant ximage:Integer:= 9;
--no of bits for yimage--
constant yimage:Integer:= 319;
--the xdimension -1 of the image, ie no of cols--
constant Yimage:Integer:= 239 ;
--the ydimension -1 of the image, ie no of rows--
--int types--
subtype t_result is integer range -result_range to result_range-1;
subtype t_input is integer range -input_range to input_range-1;
subtype t_length is integer range 0 to 15;
subtype t_inp is integer range 0 to 1023;

```

5

10

15

20

25

30

40

55

```

subtype t_blk is integer range 0 to 3;
subtype t_sub is integer range 0 to 3;
subtype t_cqd is integer range 0 to ximage;
subtype t_row is integer range 0 to yimage;
subtype t_carry is integer range 0 to 1;
subtype t_quant is integer range 0 to qmax;
--address for resultdwt memory is 1 frame--
subtype t_memory_addr is integer range 0 to (2 ** max_octave) * (ximage+1)*(yimage+1)-1;
subtype t_octave is integer range 0 to max_octave;

--bit string and boolean types types--
type bool is (f,t);
type flag is (error , ok);
--control signals--
type t_reset is (rst,no_rst);
type t_load is (write,read);
type t_load_vec is ARRAY (NATURAL RANGE <>) of t_load;
--r/wbar control--
TYPE t_mem IS (random,old_mem,new_mem);
type t_ce is (no_cel,cel);
type t_updown is (down,up);
--up/down counter control--
type t_diff is (diff,nodiff);
--diff or not in quantiser--
type t_intra is (intra,inter);
--convolver mux & and types--
type t_mux is (left,right);
type t_mux3 is (l,c,r);
type t_mux4 is (uno,dos,tres,quattro);
type t_add is (add,subt);
type t_direction is (forward,inverse);
--counter types--
type t_count_2 is (one,two);
--state types--
type t_mode is (void,void_still,stop,send,still_send,lpf_send,lpf_still,lpf_stop);
type t_mode_vec is ARRAY (NATURAL RANGE <>) of t_mode;
type t_cycle is (token_cycle,data_cycle,skip_cycle);

```

```

5
10
15
20
25
30
35
40
45
50

type t_state is (up0,up1,zz0,zz1,zz2,zz3,down1);
--type t_state is (start,up0,up1,zz0,zz1,zz2,zz3,down1);
type t_decode is (load_low,load_high);
type t_high_low is (low,high);
type t_fifo is (ok_fifo,error_fifo);
--types for the octave control unit--
type t_channel is (y,u,v);
type t_channel_factor is (luminance,color);
--types for the control of memory ports--
--type t_sparcport (t_sparc_addr,t_sparc_load,t_load,t_cq);

-- TYPES FOR DWT CHIP

CONSTANT scratch_exp:Integer:=16;          --length of scratch arith--
CONSTANT conv2d_latency:Integer:=7;          --the 2d convolver latency
constant scratch_range:Integer:= 2** (scratch_exp-1);
subtype t_scratch is integer range -scratch_range to scratch_range-1;

type t_scratch_array is array(NATURAL range <>) of t_scratch;
type t_load_array is array(NATURAL range <>) of t_load;
type t_and is (zero,pass);

type t_and_array is array(NATURAL range <>) of t_and;
type t_add_array is array(NATURAL range <>) of t_add;
type t_mux_array is array(NATURAL range <>) of t_mux;
type t_mux4_array is array(NATURAL range <>) of t_mux4;

type t_count_control is (count_0,count_1,count_2,count_3,count_rst,count_carry,count_lml);
type t_round is (shift3,shift4,shift5);
type t_input_mux is (dwt_in,mem_in);

```

5  
10  
15  
20  
25  
30

```

FUNCTION U_TO_I(bits: bit_vector) RETURN natural;
FUNCTION S_TO_I(bits: bit_vector) RETURN natural;
PROCEDURE I_TO_S(Int:in integer; SIGNAL bits:out bit_vector);
end dvt_types;

package body dvt_types is

FUNCTION U_TO_I(bits:bit_vector) RETURN natural IS
variable result: natural:=0;
BEGIN
FOR l IN bits'range LOOP
result:=result*2 + bit'pos(bits(l));
END LOOP;
RETURN result;
END U_TO_I;

FUNCTION S_TO_I(bits:bit_vector) RETURN integer IS
variable temp:bit_vector(bits'range);
variable result: integer:=0;
BEGIN
IF bits(bits'left) = '1' THEN
temp:=NOT bits;
ELSE
temp:=bits;
END IF;
FOR l IN bits'range LOOP
result:=result*2 + bit'pos(temp(l));
END LOOP;
IF bits(bits'left) = '1' THEN
result:=(-result)-1;
END IF;
RETURN result;
END S_TO_I;

```

35  
40

45

50

55

5

10

15

20

25

30

35

40

45

50

55

```
PROCEDURE I_TO_S(INT:IN INTEGER; SIGNAL BITS:OUT BIT_VECTOR) IS
variable result:BIT_VECTOR(bits'range);
variable temp:INTEGER;
```

BEGIN

IF INT &lt; 0 THEN

TEMP:=(INT+1);

ELSE TEMP:=INT;

END IF;

FOR I IN BITS'REVERSE\_RANGE LOOP

RESULT(I):=BIT'VAL(TEMP REM 2);

TEMP:=TEMP/2;

END LOOP;

IF INT&lt;0 THEN

RESULT:="NOT RESULT";

RESULT(BITS'LEFT):="1";

END IF;

BITS&lt;=RESULT;

END I\_TO\_S;

```
FUNCTION INT_TO_S(N:NATURAL; SIGNAL INT:IN INTEGER) RETURN BIT_VECTOR IS
variable result:BIT_VECTOR(1 TO N);
variable TEMP:INTEGER;
```

BEGIN

IF INT &lt; 0 THEN

TEMP:=(INT+1);

ELSE TEMP:=INT;

END IF;

FOR I IN N DOWNTO 1 LOOP

RESULT(I):=BIT'VAL(TEMP REM 2);

TEMP:=TEMP/2;

END LOOP;

-- check to see if integer fits in n bits

5

10

15

20

25

30

35

45

50

55

```

ASSERT (temp=0)
REPORT "Int TO BIG FOR n BITS"
SEVERITY FAILURE;

IF int<0 THEN
  result:=NOT result;
  result(1):='1';
END IF;

RETURN result;
END INT_TO_S;

end dwt_types;
--a model of an ELLA compatible RAM
use work.DWT_TYPES.all;

entity ella_ram is
PORT(
  ln_data:in t_input,
  wr_addr:in t_memory_addr,
  rd_addr:in t_memory_addr,
  rw:in t_load,
  out_data:out t_input);
end ella_ram;

architecture behave of ella_ram is
BEGIN

ram:process
type mem is array(natural range <>) of t_input;
variable memory:mem(0 to 2000);
--variable memory:mem(0 to (2 ** max_octave)*(ximage+1)*(yimage+1)+(ximage+1))-1);

```

```

5
10
15
20
25
30
35
40
45
50
55

BEGIN
    wait on rw, wr_addr, rd_addr ;
    SC:
    --IF rw'event AND rw = write THEN memory(wr_addr):=in_data ;
    IF rw = write THEN memory(wr_addr):=in_data ;
    ELSE null;
    END IF;

    out_data <= memory(rd_addr);
END PROCESS;
END behave;

CONFIGURATION ELLA_RAM_CON OF ELLA_RAM IS
    FOR behave
        PORT(
            END ELLA_RAM CON;

-- ram for scratch memories
use work.DWT_TYPES.all;

entity scratch_ram is
PORT(
    in_data:in t_scratch;
    wr_addr:in t_memory_addr;
    rd_addr:in t_memory_addr;
    rw:in t_load;
    out_data:out t_scratch);
end scratch_ram;

architecture behave of scratch_ram is
BEGIN

ram:process
variable memory:t_scratch_array(0 to 1023);
--variable memory:mem(0 to (2 ** max_octave)*( ximage+1)*(yimage+1))-1);

```

```

5
10
15
20
25
30
35
40
45
50
55

BEGIN
  wait on rw, wr_addr, rd_addr ;
  if
    --IF rw'event AND rw = write THEN memory(wr_addr):=in_data ;
    IP rw = write THEN memory(wr_addr):=in_data ;
    BLSE null;
  END IF;

  out_data <= memory(rd_addr);
END PROCESS;
END behave;

CONFIGURATION SCRATCH_RAM_CON OF SCRATCH_RAM IS
  FOR behave
  END POR;
END SCRATCH_RAM_CON;

--the mem control unit for the DWT chip, outputs the memport values for the sparc, and dwt--
--inputs datain from these 2 ports and mux's it to the 2d convolver.-- 
use WORK.dwt_types.all;
use WORK.util.all;
use WORK.util_dwt.all;
use WORK.dff_package.all;

entity U_MBM_CONTROL IS
PORT(
  ck : in bit ;
  reset : in t_reset ;
  direction : in t_direction ;
  channel : in t_channel ;
  octave : in t_octave ;
  addr_w,addr_r : in t_memory_addr ;
  zero_hh : in t_load ;
  out_1 : out t_input_mux;
  out_2 : out t_memory_addr;

```

```

      5
      10
      15
      20
      25
      30
      35
      40
      45
      50
      55

out_2_2 : out t_memory_addr;
out_2_3 : out t_load;
      if:
out_3_1 : out t_load;
out_3_2 : out t_ce);
end U_MEM_CONTROL;
```

## architecture behave OF U\_MEM\_CONTROL IS

```

BEGIN
      --the comb. logic for the control of the I/O ports of the chip--
PROCESS(direction,octave,zero_hh)
variable rw_sparc:t_load;
variable rw_dwt:t_load;
variable cs_dwt:t_ce;
variable input_mux:t_input_mux;
variable zero_hh_bit:bit;
BEGIN
      rw_sparc := read;
      rw_dwt := read;
      cs_dwt := no_sel;
      input_mux := mem_in;
      zero_hh_bit := '0';

      IF direction = forward AND octave=0 THEN
            cs_dwt := sel;
            Input_mux := dwt_in;
      ELSIF direction = inverse AND octave=0 AND
            zero_hh = write THEN
            rw_dwt := write;
            cs_dwt := sel;
      ELSE
            null;
      END IF;
END PROCESS;
```

5

10

15

20

25

30

35

40

45

50

55

```

END IP;

--rw_sparc = write when ck=1 and zero_hh=write, otherwise = read--
CASE zero_hh IS
  WHEN write => zero_hh_bit:= '1';
  WHEN OTHERS => zero_hh_bit:= '0';
END CASE;

rw_sparc := zero_hh;

out_1 <= Input_mux;
out_2_3 <= rw_sparc;
out_3_1 <= rw_dwt;
out_3_2 <= cs_dwt;
END PROCESS;
out_2_1 <=addr_y;
out_2_2 <=addr_x;
END;

CONFIGURATION MEM_CONTROL_CON OF U_MEM_CONTROL IS
  FOR behave
    END POR;
  END MEM_CONTROL_CON;
  -- the basic Id_convolver without the control unit--
  use work.DWT_TYPBS.all;
  use work.util_dwt.all;
  entity U_MULR_AND IS
    PORT(
      reset : in t_reset,
      in_in : in t_input,
      andsel : in t_and_array(1 to 3),
      centermaxsel : in t_mux_array(1 to 2));

```

5

10

15

20

30

35

40

45

50

55

```

muxsel : in t_mux4_array(1 to 3) ;
muxandsel : in t_and_array(1 to 3) ;
addsel : in tadd_array(1 to 4) ;
direction : in t_direction ;
pdsl : in t_scratch_array(1 to 4) ;

out_1 : out t_scratch_array(1 to 4) ;

FUNCTION AND_2 (in1:t_scratch;sel:t_and) RETURN t_scratch IS
BEGIN
CASE sel IS
WHEN pass => RETURN in1;
WHEN zero => RETURN 0;
END CASE;
END;

end U_MULT_ADD;
```

architecture behave OF U\_MULT\_ADD IS

```

COMPONENT U_MULTIPLIER_ST
PORT(
in_in : in t_input ;
out_1 : out t_scratch_array(1 to 7) );
end COMPONENT;
```

```

signal x3:t_scratch;
signal x2:t_scratch;
signal x8:t_scratch;
signal x5:t_scratch;
signal x11:t_scratch;
signal x19:t_scratch;
signal x30:t_scratch;
```

```

signal mult:t_scratch_array(1 to 7);
```

5

10

15

20

25

30

35

40

45

50

55

```

signal mux1:t_scratch;
signal mux2:t_scratch;
signal mux3:t_scratch;
signal centermux:t_scratch_array(1 to 2);
signal and1:t_scratch;
signal and2:t_scratch;
signal and3:t_scratch;
signal and4:t_scratch;
signal add1init_scratch;
signal add3init_scratch;
signal add4init_scratch;
signal add_out:t_scratch_array(1 to 4);

BEGIN

--the multiplier outputs--
x3 <= mult(1);
x5 <= mult(2);
x11 <= mult(3);
x19 <= mult(4);
x2 <= mult(5);
x8 <= mult(6);
x30 <= mult(7);

--the mux outputs--
mux1 <= MUX_4(x11,x5,x8,x2,muxsel(1));
mux2 <= MUX_4(x19,x30,x8,0,muxsel(2));
mux3 <= MUX_4(x11,x5,x8,x2,muxsel(3));

centermux <= (MUX_2(pde1(1),pde1(3),centermuxsel(1)),
               MUX_2(pde1(2),pde1(4),centermuxsel(2)));
-- the AND gates zero the adder inputs every 2nd row --
-- the and gate outputs --
and1 <= AND_2(pde1(2),andsel(1));

```

5

10

15

20

25

30

35

40

45

50

55

```

and2 <= AND_2(pde1(3), andsel(1));
and3 <= AND_2(centermux(1), andsel(2));
and4 <= AND_2(centermux(2), andsel(3));

add1in <= AND_2(mux1,muxandsel(1));
add3in <= AND_2(mux3,muxandsel(2));
add4in <= AND_2(x3,muxandsel(3));

MULT_MAP: U_MULTIPLIER_ST PORT MAP(in_in,mult);

add_out(1) <= ADD_SUB(and1,add1in,addsel(1));
add_out(2) <= ADD_SUB(and3,mux2,addsel(2));
add_out(3) <= ADD_SUB(and4,add3in,addsel(3));
add_out(4) <= ADD_SUB(and2,add4in,addsel(4));

--architecture outputs--
out_1 <= add_out;

END;

CONFIGURATION MULT_ADD_CON OF U_MULT_ADD IS
FOR behave
  FOR ALL:U_MULTIPLIER_ST  USE ENTITY WORK.U_MULTIPLIER_ST
    PORT MAP,
      (behave);
END FOR;
END MULT_ADD_CON;
-- the basic multiplier unit of the convolver --
use WORK.dat_types.all;
entity U_MULTIPLIER_ST IS
PORT(
  in_in : in t_input ;
  out_1 : out t_scratch_array(1 to 7) ) ;

architecture behave OF U_MULTIPLIER_ST IS
signal in_sibit_vector(1 to input_exp);

```

5

10

15

20

25

30

35

40

45

50

55

```

signal x2_st:BIT_VECTOR(1 to input_exp+1);
signal x8_st:BIT_VECTOR(1 to input_exp+3);
signal x4_st:BIT_VECTOR(1 to input_exp+2);
signal x16_st:BIT_VECTOR(1 to input_exp+4);
signal x21t_scratch:=0;
signal x31t_scratch:=0;
signal x51t_scratch:=0;
signal x81t_scratch:=0;
signal x111t_scratch:=0;
signal x191t_scratch:=0;
signal x301t_scratch:=0;

--the multiplier outputs, fast adder code commented out--
I_TO_S(in_in,in_s)

x2_st <= ln_s & B"0";
x2 <= S_TO_I(x2_st);

x8_st <= ln_s & B"000";
x8 <= S_TO_I(x8_st);

x3 <= ln_in + x2;

x4_st <= ln_s & B"00";
x5 <= ln_in + S_TO_I(x4_st) ;

x11_st <= x3 + S_TO_I(x8_st);

x16_st <= ln_s & B"0000";

x19 <= x3 + S_TO_I(x16_st);

x30 <= x11 +x19;

--architecture outputs--
out_1 <= { x3,x5,x11,x19,x2,x8,x30 };

```

5

10

15

20

25

20

7

6

```

CONFIGURATION MULTIPLIER_ST_CON OF U_MULTIPLIBR_ST IS
  FOR behave
    END POR;
  END MULTIPLIER_ST_CON;
  use WORK.DWT_TYPES.all;
  entity U_ROUND_BITS IS
    PORT(
      in_in : in t_scratch ;
      sel: in t_round ;
      out_1 : out t_input);
    end U_ROUND_BITS;
  BEGIN

    architecture behave of U_ROUND_BITS IS
      signal s1 : BIT_VECTOR(1 to scratch_exp);
      signal shift : BIT_VECTOR(1 to scratch_exp);
      signal m6 : BIT;
      signal cs : BIT;
      signal cs_int : t_carry;
      signal sel : BIT;
      signal sum17 : integer;
      signal sum17_str : BIT_VECTOR(1 to scratch_exp+1);
      signal sum : BIT_VECTOR(1 to scratch_exp);
      signal out_final : BIT_VECTOR(1 to input_exp);
      BEGIN

        --THIS ASSUMES THAT THE INPUT_EXP = 10111111111111111111111111111111
        --sel chooses a round factor of 3, 4, 5, ...
        --the lsb is the right hand of the string, ...
        --the index 1 of the string is the left hand end, else
        --so on add ops bit 1 is the carryout-->
        l1_TO_S(in_in,sel);
        selmbs <= o1(1);
      END;
    END;
  END;

```

5  
10  
15  
20  
25  
30  
35  
40  
45  
50  
55

```
--needs to be a 16 bit output for the adder--
WITH sel
  SELECT
    shift <=
      *: mab & mab & sel(1 to scratch_exp-3) WHEN shift3,
      mab & mab & mab & sel(1 to (scratch_exp-4)) WHEN shift4,
      mab & mab & mab & mab & sel(1 to scratch_exp-5) WHEN shift5,
--the carry to round, 1/2 value is rounded towards 0--
c<= '0' WHEN sel=shift4 AND mab='0' AND sel(scratch_exp-3 to scratch_exp)=b"1000" ELSE --round down on
1/2 value
      sel(scratch_exp-3) WHEN sel=shift4 ELSE -- neg. no
      '0' WHEN sel=shift3 AND mab='0' AND sel(scratch_exp-2 to scratch_exp) = b"100" ELSE
      sel(scratch_exp-2) WHEN sel=shift3 ELSE
      '0' WHEN sel=shift5 AND mab='0' AND sel(scratch_exp-4 to scratch_exp)= b"10000" ELSE
      sel(scratch_exp-4),
--cs_int <= 1 WHEN cs ='1' ELSE
      0;
sum17 <= cs_int + s_TO_I(shift),
I_TO_S(sum17,sum17_str),
sum <= sum17_str(2 to scratch_exp+1),
-- 1 signifies the rounded value is in range, 0 that it must be saturated
--these are the 5 mab's from the 13 bit word
sel <= '1' WHEN sel=shift3 AND (sum(4 to 7) = b"1111" OR sum(4 to 7) = b"0000") ELSE --value in range
      '0' WHEN sel=shift3 ELSE
--these are the 3 mab's from the 12 bit word left after taking out the 4 sign extension bits
      '1' WHEN sel=shift4 AND (sum(5 to 7) = b"111" OR sum(5 to 7) = b"000") ELSE --value in range
      '0' WHEN sel=shift4 ELSE
--these are the 2 mab's from the 11 bit word
      '1' WHEN sel=shift5 AND (sum(6 to 7) = b"11" OR sum(6 to 7) = b"00") ELSE --value in range
```



5

10

15

20

25

30

35

```

END LOOP;
RETURN out_b;
END ALL_SAME;

FUNCTION ZERO (CONSTANT n:NATURAL) RETURN BIT_VECTOR IS
variable out_b:BIT_VECTOR(1 to n);
BEGIN
for i IN 1 to n LOOP
out_b(i):='0';
END LOOP;
RETURN out_b;
END ZERO;

FUNCTION REV (CONSTANT n:natural;in_bit_vector) RETURN BIT_VECTOR IS
variable temp:BIT_VECTOR(1 to n);
BEGIN
for i IN 1 to n LOOP
temp(i):=in_bit_vector(n-i+1,in_bit_vector'left);
END LOOP;
RETURN temp;
END;

END utila;

use work.DNT_TYPES.all;
use work.util.all;
use work.dff_package.all;

-- returns a signal with n copies of the zero
package util_drt is
FUNCTION MUX_4 (in1:t_scratch,in2:t_scratch,in3:t_scratch,in4:t_scratch;sel:t_mux4) RETURN t_scratch;
FUNCTION MUX_2 (in1:t_scratch,in2:t_scratch;sel:t_mux) RETURN t_scratch;

FUNCTION ADD_SUB (in1:t_scratch,in2:t_scratch;addsel:t_add) RETURN t_scratch;

FUNCTION BIT_LOAD(in1:bit) RETURN t_load;

```

55

5  
10  
15  
20  
25  
30  
35  
40  
45  
50  
55

```

end util_dwt;

package body util_dwt is
FUNCTION MUX_4 (in1:t_scratch,in2:t_scratch,in3:t_scratch,in4:t_scratch) RETURN t_scratch IS
BEGIN
CASE sel IS
WHEN uno => RETURN in1;
WHEN dos => RETURN in2;
WHEN tree => RETURN in3;
WHEN quattro => RETURN in4;
END CASE;
END;

FUNCTION MUX_2 (in1:t_scratch,in2:t_scratch,sel:t_mux) RETURN t_scratch IS
BEGIN
CASE sel IS
WHEN left => RETURN in1;
WHEN right => RETURN in2;
END CASE;
END;

FUNCTION ADD_SUB (in1:t_scratch,in2:t_scratch,addsel:t_add) RETURN t_scratch IS
BEGIN
CASE addsel IS
WHEN add => RETURN in1 + in2;
WHEN subt => RETURN in1 - in2;
END CASE;
END;

FUNCTION BIT_LOAD(in1:bit) RETURN t_load IS
BEGIN
CASE in1 IS
WHEN '1' => RETURN write;
WHEN OTHERS => RETURN read;
END CASE;
END;

END util_dwt;

```

**5**

**10**

**15**

**20**

**25**

**30**

**35**

**40**



**45**

**50**

**55**

5  
10  
15  
20  
25  
30  
35  
40  
45  
50  
55

```
--VHDL Description of Tree Processor/Encoder-Decoder Circuit--
--The state machine to control the address counters/
--only works for 3 octave decomposition in y,2 in u/v/
--these are the addr gens for the x & y addresses of a pixel given the octaves/
--subblk no. for each octave. Each x/y address is of the form /
--    x = count(5 bits)(blk(3) to blk(octave+1))(0) (octave 0's) /
--    y = count(5 bits)(blk(3) to blk(octave+1))(0) (octave 0's) /
--this makes up the 9 bit address for CIF Images /
--the blk & s counters are vertical 2 bit with the lab in the x coord /
--and carry out on j, last counter is both horis and vertical counter /
--read_enable enable the block count for the read address, but not the /
--carry-outs for the mode change, this is done on the write addr cycle /
--by write_enable, so same address values generated on read & write cycles/
use work.DWT_TIPRS.all;
use work.dff_package.all;
```

entity U\_ADDR\_GEN is

```
port(
    ck : in bit ;
    reset : in t_reset ;
    new_channel : in t_channel ;
    load_channel : in t_load ;
    sub_count : in BIT_VECTOR(1 to 2) ;
    col_length : in BIT_VECTOR(1 to xsize) ;
    row_length : in BIT_VECTOR(1 to ysize) ;
    ximage_string : in BIT_VECTOR(1 to xsize) ;
    yimage_string : in BIT_VECTOR(1 to ysize) ;
    yimage_string_3 : in BIT_VECTOR(1 to 11) ;
    read_enable,write_enable : in bit ,
    new_mode : in t_mode ;

    out_1 : out t_memory_addr;
    out_2 : out t_octave;
    out_3 : out bit;
```

```

      5
      10
      15
      20
      25
      30
      35
      40
      45
      50
      55

out_4 : out bit;
out_5 : out bit;
out_6 : out t_state);

end U_ADDR_GEN;

architecture behave of U_ADDR_GEN is

COMPONENT U_CONTROL_ENABLE
port(
  ck : in bit;
  reset : in t_reset;
  new_channel,channel : in t_channel;
  c_blk : in BIT_VECTOR(1 to 3);
  subband : in BIT_VECTOR(1 to 2);
  load_channel : in t_load;
  new_mode : in t_mode;
  out_1 : out BIT_VECTOR(1 to 3);
  out_2 : out t_octave;
  out_3 : out bit;
  out_4 : out bit;
  out_5 : out t_state);

end COMPONENT;

COMPONENT COUNTER
GENERIC (nCount:integer);
PORT(
  ck:in bit;
  reset:in t_reset;
  en:in bit;
  x_lpf:in bit_vector(1 to nCount);
  q:out bit_vector(1 to nCount);
  carry:out bit);
end COMPONENT;

```

5

10

15

20

25

30

40

45

50

55

```

COMPONENT BLK_SUB_COUNT
PORT
  ck:in bit ;reset:in t_reset/en,cin_en,out_en:in bit/q/out bit_vector(1 to 2);carry:out bit);
end COMPONENT;

```

```

signal rw_enable:bit;
signal y_lpf:BIT_VECTOR(1 to ysize-4);
signal x_lpf:BIT_VECTOR(1 to xsize-4);
signal tree_done:bit:='0';
signal lpf_done:bit:='0';
signal lpf_block_done:bit:='0';
signal sub_en:bit;
signal y_en:bit;
signal x_en:bit;
signal blk_en:BIT_VECTOR(1 to 3):=B"000";
signal octave:t;
signal control_4:t;
signal x_count_1:BIT_VECTOR(1 to xsize-4);
signal x_count_2:bit;
signal y_count_1:BIT_VECTOR(1 to ysize-4);
signal y_count_2:bit;
signal blk_count_2:BIT_VECTOR(1 to 3):=B"000";
signal blk_count_1_1:BIT_VECTOR(1 to 2):=B"00";
signal blk_count_1_2:bit;
signal blk_count_2_1:BIT_VECTOR(1 to 2):=B"00";
signal blk_count_2_2:bit;
signal blk_count_3_1:BIT_VECTOR(1 to 2):=B"00";
signal blk_count_3_2:bit;
signal x_msb_out:BIT_VECTOR(1 to xsize-3);
signal x_lab_out:BIT_VECTOR(1 to 3);
signal y_msb_out:BIT_VECTOR(1 to ysize-3);
signal y_lab_out:BIT_VECTOR(1 to 3);
signal x_addr:BIT_VECTOR(1 to xsize);
signal y_addr:BIT_VECTOR(1 to ysize);
signal base_rows:BIT_VECTOR(1 to 11);
signal mult_fac:BIT_VECTOR(1 to xsize);

```

5

10

15

20

25

30

40

45

50

55

```

signal Int_addr:integer:=0;
signal temp:integer:=0;
signal address:xt_memory_addr;
signal address_x:t_memory_addr;
signal address_y:t_memory_addr;

BEGIN

--size of lpf/2 -1, for y,u|v. 2 because count in pairs of lpf values
--lpf same size for all channels!!if

y_lpf <= row_length(1 to ysize-4);
x_lpf <= col_length(1 to xsize-4);

x_en<= '1' WHEN tree_done='1' OR lpf_block_done= '1' BLSR
              '0';

--clk y_count when all blocks done for subs 1-3, or when final blk done for lpf
y_en<= '1' WHEN sub_count = B"00" AND lpf_block_done='1' AND x_count_2='1' ELSE
              '1' WHEN sub_count /=B"00" AND tree_done= '1' AND x_count_2='1' ELSE
              '0';

--enable the sub band counter#
sub_en<= '1' WHEN y_count_2='1' AND y_en='1' ELSE
              '0';

lpf_done <= sub_en WHEN sub_count = B"00" ELSE '0';

WITH channel SELECT
  x_msb_out<= x_count_1 & blk_count_3_1(2) WHEN y,
  --always the msb bits#
  B"0" & x_count_1 WHEN u|v;

WITH channel SELECT
  y_msb_out<= y_count_1 & blk_count_3_1(1) WHEN y,
  B"0" & y_count_1 WHEN u|v;

```

5

10

15

20

25

30

40

45

50

55

```

WITH octave SELECT
--bit2 is lab/
x_lab_out<= blk_count_2_1(2) & blk_count_1_1(2) & sub_count(2) WHEN 0 ,
blk_count_2_1(2)& sub_count(2) & '0' WHEN 1,
sub_count(2) & '0' & '0' WHEN 2,
b"000" WHEN OTHERS;

WITH octave SELECT
--bit 1 is mabs
y_lab_out<= blk_count_2_1(1)&blk_count_1_1(1) & sub_count(1) WHEN 0 ,
blk_count_2_1(1) & sub_count(1) & '0' WHEN 1,
sub_count(1) & '0' & '0' WHEN 2,
b"000" WHEN OTHERS;

x_addr <= x_mab_out & x_lsb_out;
y_addr <= y_mab_out & y_lsb_out;

WITH channel SELECT
base_rows=b"0000000000" WHEN y,
  B"0" & yimage_string(1 to ysize) & B"0" WHEN u,
  yimage_string_3 WHEN v,
  --base address for no of rows for y,u & memory areas
  mult_fac<ximage_string WHEN y,
  b"0" & ximage_string(1 to xsize-1) WHEN u|v,
  address_x<= U_TO_I(x_addr);
  address_y<= U_TO_I(y_addr);
  address <= U_TO_I(x_addr) + ( U_TO_I(y_addr) + U_TO_I(base_rows) ) * U_TO_I(mult_fac) );

```

5  
10  
15  
20  
25  
30  
35  
40  
45  
50

```

blk_count_2 <= blk_count_1_2 & blk_count_2_2 & blk_count_3_2;
rw_enable <= read_enable OR write_enable;
cnt1: COUNTER GENERIC MAP(xsize=4) PORT MAP(ck,reset,x_on,x_lpf,x_count_1,x_count_2);
cnt2: COUNTER GENERIC MAP(ysize=4) PORT MAP(ck,reset,y_on,y_lpf,y_count_1,y_count_2);
--use new_channel so on channel change control state picks up correct value/
cnt_en:U_CONTROL_ENABLE PORT MAP(ck,reset,new_channel,channel,blk_count_2,
sub_count,load_channel,new_mode,blk_en,octave,true_done,lpf_block_done,control_4);
bsub_1: BLK_SUB_COUNT PORT MAP(ck,reset,blk_on(1),rw_enable,write_enable,blk_count_1_1,blk_count_1_2);
bsub_2: BLK_SUB_COUNT PORT MAP(ck,reset,blk_on(2),rw_enable,write_enable,blk_count_2_1,blk_count_2_2);
bsub_3: BLK_SUB_COUNT PORT MAP(ck,reset,blk_on(3),rw_enable,write_enable,blk_count_3_1,blk_count_3_2);
--procedure outputs/
out_1 <= address;
out_2 <= octave;
out_3 <= sub_on;
out_4 <= tree_done;
out_5 <= lpf_done;
out_6 <= control_4;
end behave;

CONFIGURATION ADDR_GEN_CON OF U_ADDR_GEN_1B
FOR behave
  FOR ALL : BLK_SUB_COUNT USE CONFIGURATION WORK.BLK_SUB_CON;
  END FOR;
  FOR ALL : COUNTER USE CONFIGURATION WORK.COUNTER_CON;
  END FOR;
  FOR cnt_en : U_CONTROL_ENABLE USE CONFIGURATION WORK.CONTROL_ENABLE_CON;
  END FOR;
END FOR;
END ADDR_GEN_CON;

--a counter to control the sequencing of, token, huffman cycles--
--decide reset is enabled 1 cycle early, and latched to avoid glitches--
--lpf_stop is a dummy mode to disable the block writes huffman data--
--cycles for that block--

```

5

10

15

20

25

30

40

45

50

55

```

use work.DWT_TYPES.all;
use work.diff_package.all;

entity U_CONTROL_COUNTER IS
PORT(
    ck : in bit ;
    reset : in t_reset ;
    mode,new_mode : in t_mode ;
    direction : in t_direction ,
    out_0 : out t_load,
    out_1 : out t_cycle,
    out_2 : out t_reset,
    out_3 : out bit,
    out_4 : out bit,
    out_5 : out t_load,
    out_6 : out t_ce,
    out_7 : out t_load,
    out_8 : out t_ce) ;

--mode load,cycle,decide reset,read_addr_enable,write_addr_flag--  

--decode write_addr_enable early and latch to avoid feedback loop with pro_mode--  

--In MODE CONTROL--  

end U_CONTROL_COUNTER;
```

```

architecture behave of U_CONTROL_COUNTER is
COMPONENT COUNT_SYNC
GENERIC (n:integer);
PORT(
    ck:in bit ;
    reset:in t_reset;
    en:in bit;
    q:out bit_vector(1 to n);
    carryout bit);
end COMPONENT;
```

```

signal write_d1:bit;
signal write_s1:bit;
signal decide_d1:bit;
signal decide_s1:bit;
signal count_reset;
signal count_s1:bit;
signal count_length;
signal count_1:BIT_VECTOR(1 to 4);
signal count_2:bit;
signal always_one:bit:='1';
BEGIN
    count_len <= U_TO_I(count_1);
control:PROCESS(clk,count_reset,direction,mode,new_mode,count_len)
VARIABLE
    cycle : t_cycle;
    decide_reset : t_reset;
    load_mode : t_load;
    load_flags : t_load;
    cs_new : t_CS;
    cs_old : t_CS;
    rw_old : t_load;
    read_addr_enable : bit;
    write_addr_enable : bit;
BEGIN
    cycle := skip_cycle;
    decide_reset := no_rst;
    load_mode := read;
    load_flags := read;
    cs_new := no_sel;
    cs_old := sel;
    rw_old := read;
    read_addr_enable := '0';
    write_addr_enable := '0';
CASE direction IS

```

```

5
10
15
20
25
30
35
40
45
50
55

WHEN forward => CASE mode IS
  WHEN send|still_send|lpf_send =>
    WHEN count_len IS
      WHEN 0 to 3 => read_addr_enable := '1';
      CS_new:= sel;
    WHEN 4 => cycle := token_cycle;
      load_flag:= write;
      write_addr_enable:= '1';
    WHEN 5 to 7 => write_addr_enable:= '1';
      CASE new_mode IS
        WHEN stop|lpf_stop => cycle := skip_cycle;
          rw_old:= read;
          CS_old:= no_sel;
        WHEN void => cycle := skip_cycle;
          rw_old:= write;
        WHEN OTHERS => cycle := date_cycle;
          rw_old:= write;
      END CASE;
    WHEN 8 => decide_reset := rst;
      CASE new_mode IS
        WHEN stop|lpf_stop => cycle := skip_cycle;
          rw_old:= read;
          CS_old:= no_sel;
        WHEN void => cycle := skip_cycle;
          load_mode:= write;
          rw_old:= write;
        WHEN OTHERS => cycle := date_cycle;
          load_mode:= write;
          rw_old:= write;
      END CASE;
    WHEN OTHERS => null;
  END CASE;

WHEN still => CASE count_len IS
  WHEN 0 to 3 => read_addr_enable := '1';
  CS_new:= sel;

```

```

5
10
15
20
25
30
35
40
45
50
55

WHEN      4 => cycle := token_cycle;
           write_addr_enable := '1';
           load_flags:= write;
WHEN      5 to 7 => rw_old := write;
           write_addr_enable := '1';
CASE new_mode IS
  WHEN void_still => cycle := skip_cycle;
  WHEN OTHERS => cycle := data_cycle;
END CASE;

WHEN      8 => decide_reset := rst;
           rw_old:= write;
           load_mode:= write;
CASE new_mode IS
  WHEN void_still => cycle := skip_cycle;
  WHEN OTHERS => cycle := data_cycle;
END CASE;

WHEN OTHERS => null;
END CASE;

WHEN lpf_still => CASE count_len IS
  WHEN 0 to 3 => read_addr_enable := '1';
                 ce_new:= sel;
  WHEN      4 => cycle := token_cycle;
                 write_addr_enable := '1';
                 load_flags:= write;
  WHEN      5 to 7 => cycle := data_cycle;
                 rw_old:= write;
                 write_addr_enable := '1';
                 cycle := data_cycle;
  WHEN      8 => cycle := data_cycle;
                 rw_old:= write;
                 decide_reset:= rst;
                 load_mode:= write;
  WHEN OTHERS => null;
END CASE;

```

```

      5
      10
      15
      20
      25
      30
      35
      40
      45
      50
      55

      WHEN void ->
        CASE count_len IS
          WHEN 0 to 3 => read_addr_enable := '1';
          cs_new := sel;
          WHEN 4 => load_flag := write;
          cycle := token_cycle;
          write_addr_enable := '1';
          WHEN 5 to 7 => write_addr_enable := '1';

          CASE new_mode IS
            WHEN stop => rw_old := read;
            cs_old := no_sel;
            WHEN OTHERS => rw_old := write;
            END CASE;

            WHEN 8 => decide_reset := rst;
            CASE new_mode IS
              WHEN stop => rw_old := read;
              cs_old := no_sel;
              load_mode := write;
              rw_old := write;
            END CASE;

            WHEN OTHERS => null;
            END CASE;

            WHEN OTHERS => null;
            END CASE;

            WHEN void_still =>
              CASE count_len IS
                WHEN 0 -> write_addr_enable := '1';
                WHEN 1 to 3 => write_addr_enable := '1';
                rw_old := write;
                WHEN 4 => rw_old := write;
                load_mode := write;
                decide_reset := rst;
                WHEN OTHERS => null;
                END CASE;

                WHEN OTHERS => null;
                END CASE;
      
```

```

5          10
15         20
25         25
30         35
35         40
40         45
45         50
50         55
55         60
60         65
65         70
70         75
75         80
80         85
85         90
90         95
95         100

WHEN inverse => CASE mode IS
  WHEN send|still_send|lpr_send => CASE count_len IS
    WHEN 0 to 3 => read_addr_enable := '1';
    WHEN 4 => cycle := token_cycle;
    write_addr_enable := '1';
    load_flag := write;
  WHEN 5 to 7 => write_addr_enable := '1';
  CASE new_mode IS
    WHEN stop|lpr_stop => cycle := skip_cycle;
    rw_old := read;
    cs_old := no_sel;
  WHEN void => cycle := skip_cycle;
  rw_old := write;
  WHEN OTHERS => cycle := data_cycle;
  rw_old := write;
END CASE;

WHEN 8 => decide_reset := rate;
CASE new_mode IS
  WHEN stop|lpr_stop => cycle := skip_cycle;
  rw_old := read;
  cs_old := no_sel;
  WHEN void => cycle := skip_cycle;
  load_mode := write;
  rw_old := write;
  WHEN OTHERS => cycle := data_cycle;
  load_mode := write;
  rw_old := write;
END CASE;

WHEN OTHERS => cycle := data_cycle;
END CASE;
CASE count_len IS
  WHEN 0 => null;
  WHEN 1 => cycle := token_cycle;
--skip to allow reset in huffman--

```

```

5
10
15
20
25
30
35
40
45
50
55

WHEN 2 to 4 => rw_old := write;
      write_addr_enable := '1';
      CASR new_mode IS
      WHEN void_still => cycle := skip_cycle;
      WHEN OTHERS => cycle := data_cycle;
END CASE;

WHEN 5 => rw_old:=write;
      decide_reset:=rst;
      Load_mode:= write;
      CASP new mode IS
      WHEN void_still => cycle := skip_cycle;
      WHEN OTHERS => cycle := data_cycle;
END CASE;

WHEN OTHERS => null;
END CASE;

WHEN 1PF_still =>
CASE count_len IS
WHEN 0 =>null ;
WHEN 1 => write_addr_enable := '1';
WHEN 2 to 4 => cycle := data_cycle;
      rw_old:= write;
      write_addr_enable := '1';
WHEN 5 => cycle := data_cycle;
      rw_old:= write;
      decide_reset:=rst;
      load_mode:= write;
      WHEN OTHERS => null;
END CASE;

WHEN void =>
--match with previous--
--skip for write_enb delay--
WHEN 0 to 3 => read_addr_enable := '1';
WHEN 4 => load_flags := write;
      cycle:= token_cycle;
      write_addr_enable := '1';
--dummy token cycle for mode update--
```

```

5
10
15
20
25
30
35
40
45
50

      WHEN 5 to 7 => write_addr_enable := '1';
      CASE new_mode IS
        WHEN stop => rw_old := read;
                    cs_old := no_sel;
        WHEN OTHERS => rw_old := write;
      END CASE;

      WHEN 8 => decide_reset := reset;
      CASE new_mode IS
        WHEN stop => rw_old := read;
                    cs_old := no_sel;
        WHEN OTHERS => load_mode := write;
                    rw_old := write;
      END CASE;

      WHEN OTHERS => null;
    END CASE;
    CASE count_len IS
      WHEN 0 => null;
      WHEN 1 => write_addr_enable := '1';
      WHEN 2 to 4 => write_addr_enable := '1';
      WHEN 5 => rw_old := write;
                    load_mode := write;
                    decide_reset := reset;
      WHEN OTHERS => null;
    END CASE;
    WHEN OTHERS => null;
  END CASE;
END CASE;

--match with rest--
--dummy as write delayed--

      WHEN 5 to 7 => write_addr_enable := '1';
      WHEN OTHERS => decide_reset := reset;
      DFP(ck,reset,write_sig,write_dcl);
      out_0 <= load_mode;
      out_1 <= cycle;

```

```

5
out_2 <= decide_sig;
out_3 <= read_addr_enable;
out_4 <= write_dai;
out_5 <= load_flags;
out_6 <= CS_new;
out_7 <= RW_old;
out_8 <= CS_old;

10
END PROCESS;

WITH reset SELECT
count_reset <= rst WHEN rst,
decide_sig WHEN OTHERS;

control_cnt: count_sync GENERIC MAP() PORT MAP(ck,count_reset,always_one,count_1,count_2);

15
END behave;

CONFIGURATION CONTROL_COUNTER CON OF U_CONTROL_COUNTER IS
FOR behave
  FOR ALL:count_sync USE ENTITY work.count_sync(behave);
  END FOR;
END FOR;
END CONTROL_COUNTER CON;
--THE STATE machine to control the address counter
--only works for 3 octave decomposition in y & 2 in u/v#  

--use work.DWT_TYPES.all;
--use work.dff_package.all;

20
entity U_CONTROL_ENABLE is
port(
  ck : in bit;
  reset : in t_reset;
  new_channel,channel : in t_channel;
  c_blk : in BIT_VECTOR(1 to 3);
  25
  30
  35
  40
  45
  50
  55
  60
  65
  70
  75
  80
  85
  90
  95
  100
  105
  110
  115
  120
  125
  130
  135
  140
  145
  150
  155
  160
  165
  170
  175
  180
  185
  190
  195
  200
  205
  210
  215
  220
  225
  230
  235
  240
  245
  250
  255
  260
  265
  270
  275
  280
  285
  290
  295
  300
  305
  310
  315
  320
  325
  330
  335
  340
  345
  350
  355
  360
  365
  370
  375
  380
  385
  390
  395
  400
  405
  410
  415
  420
  425
  430
  435
  440
  445
  450
  455
  460
  465
  470
  475
  480
  485
  490
  495
  500
  505
  510
  515
  520
  525
  530
  535
  540
  545
  550
  555
  560
  565
  570
  575
  580
  585
  590
  595
  600
  605
  610
  615
  620
  625
  630
  635
  640
  645
  650
  655
  660
  665
  670
  675
  680
  685
  690
  695
  700
  705
  710
  715
  720
  725
  730
  735
  740
  745
  750
  755
  760
  765
  770
  775
  780
  785
  790
  795
  800
  805
  810
  815
  820
  825
  830
  835
  840
  845
  850
  855
  860
  865
  870
  875
  880
  885
  890
  895
  900
  905
  910
  915
  920
  925
  930
  935
  940
  945
  950
  955
  960
  965
  970
  975
  980
  985
  990
  995
  1000
  1005
  1010
  1015
  1020
  1025
  1030
  1035
  1040
  1045
  1050
  1055
  1060
  1065
  1070
  1075
  1080
  1085
  1090
  1095
  1100
  1105
  1110
  1115
  1120
  1125
  1130
  1135
  1140
  1145
  1150
  1155
  1160
  1165
  1170
  1175
  1180
  1185
  1190
  1195
  1200
  1205
  1210
  1215
  1220
  1225
  1230
  1235
  1240
  1245
  1250
  1255
  1260
  1265
  1270
  1275
  1280
  1285
  1290
  1295
  1300
  1305
  1310
  1315
  1320
  1325
  1330
  1335
  1340
  1345
  1350
  1355
  1360
  1365
  1370
  1375
  1380
  1385
  1390
  1395
  1400
  1405
  1410
  1415
  1420
  1425
  1430
  1435
  1440
  1445
  1450
  1455
  1460
  1465
  1470
  1475
  1480
  1485
  1490
  1495
  1500
  1505
  1510
  1515
  1520
  1525
  1530
  1535
  1540
  1545
  1550
  1555
  1560
  1565
  1570
  1575
  1580
  1585
  1590
  1595
  1600
  1605
  1610
  1615
  1620
  1625
  1630
  1635
  1640
  1645
  1650
  1655
  1660
  1665
  1670
  1675
  1680
  1685
  1690
  1695
  1700
  1705
  1710
  1715
  1720
  1725
  1730
  1735
  1740
  1745
  1750
  1755
  1760
  1765
  1770
  1775
  1780
  1785
  1790
  1795
  1800
  1805
  1810
  1815
  1820
  1825
  1830
  1835
  1840
  1845
  1850
  1855
  1860
  1865
  1870
  1875
  1880
  1885
  1890
  1895
  1900
  1905
  1910
  1915
  1920
  1925
  1930
  1935
  1940
  1945
  1950
  1955
  1960
  1965
  1970
  1975
  1980
  1985
  1990
  1995
  2000
  2005
  2010
  2015
  2020
  2025
  2030
  2035
  2040
  2045
  2050
  2055
  2060
  2065
  2070
  2075
  2080
  2085
  2090
  2095
  2100
  2105
  2110
  2115
  2120
  2125
  2130
  2135
  2140
  2145
  2150
  2155
  2160
  2165
  2170
  2175
  2180
  2185
  2190
  2195
  2200
  2205
  2210
  2215
  2220
  2225
  2230
  2235
  2240
  2245
  2250
  2255
  2260
  2265
  2270
  2275
  2280
  2285
  2290
  2295
  2300
  2305
  2310
  2315
  2320
  2325
  2330
  2335
  2340
  2345
  2350
  2355
  2360
  2365
  2370
  2375
  2380
  2385
  2390
  2395
  2400
  2405
  2410
  2415
  2420
  2425
  2430
  2435
  2440
  2445
  2450
  2455
  2460
  2465
  2470
  2475
  2480
  2485
  2490
  2495
  2500
  2505
  2510
  2515
  2520
  2525
  2530
  2535
  2540
  2545
  2550
  2555
  2560
  2565
  2570
  2575
  2580
  2585
  2590
  2595
  2600
  2605
  2610
  2615
  2620
  2625
  2630
  2635
  2640
  2645
  2650
  2655
  2660
  2665
  2670
  2675
  2680
  2685
  2690
  2695
  2700
  2705
  2710
  2715
  2720
  2725
  2730
  2735
  2740
  2745
  2750
  2755
  2760
  2765
  2770
  2775
  2780
  2785
  2790
  2795
  2800
  2805
  2810
  2815
  2820
  2825
  2830
  2835
  2840
  2845
  2850
  2855
  2860
  2865
  2870
  2875
  2880
  2885
  2890
  2895
  2900
  2905
  2910
  2915
  2920
  2925
  2930
  2935
  2940
  2945
  2950
  2955
  2960
  2965
  2970
  2975
  2980
  2985
  2990
  2995
  3000
  3005
  3010
  3015
  3020
  3025
  3030
  3035
  3040
  3045
  3050
  3055
  3060
  3065
  3070
  3075
  3080
  3085
  3090
  3095
  3100
  3105
  3110
  3115
  3120
  3125
  3130
  3135
  3140
  3145
  3150
  3155
  3160
  3165
  3170
  3175
  3180
  3185
  3190
  3195
  3200
  3205
  3210
  3215
  3220
  3225
  3230
  3235
  3240
  3245
  3250
  3255
  3260
  3265
  3270
  3275
  3280
  3285
  3290
  3295
  3300
  3305
  3310
  3315
  3320
  3325
  3330
  3335
  3340
  3345
  3350
  3355
  3360
  3365
  3370
  3375
  3380
  3385
  3390
  3395
  3400
  3405
  3410
  3415
  3420
  3425
  3430
  3435
  3440
  3445
  3450
  3455
  3460
  3465
  3470
  3475
  3480
  3485
  3490
  3495
  3500
  3505
  3510
  3515
  3520
  3525
  3530
  3535
  3540
  3545
  3550
  3555
  3560
  3565
  3570
  3575
  3580
  3585
  3590
  3595
  3600
  3605
  3610
  3615
  3620
  3625
  3630
  3635
  3640
  3645
  3650
  3655
  3660
  3665
  3670
  3675
  3680
  3685
  3690
  3695
  3700
  3705
  3710
  3715
  3720
  3725
  3730
  3735
  3740
  3745
  3750
  3755
  3760
  3765
  3770
  3775
  3780
  3785
  3790
  3795
  3800
  3805
  3810
  3815
  3820
  3825
  3830
  3835
  3840
  3845
  3850
  3855
  3860
  3865
  3870
  3875
  3880
  3885
  3890
  3895
  3900
  3905
  3910
  3915
  3920
  3925
  3930
  3935
  3940
  3945
  3950
  3955
  3960
  3965
  3970
  3975
  3980
  3985
  3990
  3995
  4000
  4005
  4010
  4015
  4020
  4025
  4030
  4035
  4040
  4045
  4050
  4055
  4060
  4065
  4070
  4075
  4080
  4085
  4090
  4095
  4100
  4105
  4110
  4115
  4120
  4125
  4130
  4135
  4140
  4145
  4150
  4155
  4160
  4165
  4170
  4175
  4180
  4185
  4190
  4195
  4200
  4205
  4210
  4215
  4220
  4225
  4230
  4235
  4240
  4245
  4250
  4255
  4260
  4265
  4270
  4275
  4280
  4285
  4290
  4295
  4300
  4305
  4310
  4315
  4320
  4325
  4330
  4335
  4340
  4345
  4350
  4355
  4360
  4365
  4370
  4375
  4380
  4385
  4390
  4395
  4400
  4405
  4410
  4415
  4420
  4425
  4430
  4435
  4440
  4445
  4450
  4455
  4460
  4465
  4470
  4475
  4480
  4485
  4490
  4495
  4500
  4505
  4510
  4515
  4520
  4525
  4530
  4535
  4540
  4545
  4550
  4555
  4560
  4565
  4570
  4575
  4580
  4585
  4590
  4595
  4600
  4605
  4610
  4615
  4620
  4625
  4630
  4635
  4640
  4645
  4650
  4655
  4660
  4665
  4670
  4675
  4680
  4685
  4690
  4695
  4700
  4705
  4710
  4715
  4720
  4725
  4730
  4735
  4740
  4745
  4750
  4755
  4760
  4765
  4770
  4775
  4780
  4785
  4790
  4795
  4800
  4805
  4810
  4815
  4820
  4825
  4830
  4835
  4840
  4845
  4850
  4855
  4860
  4865
  4870
  4875
  4880
  4885
  4890
  4895
  4900
  4905
  4910
  4915
  4920
  4925
  4930
  4935
  4940
  4945
  4950
  4955
  4960
  4965
  4970
  4975
  4980
  4985
  4990
  4995
  5000
  5005
  5010
  5015
  5020
  5025
  5030
  5035
  5040
  5045
  5050
  5055
  5060
  5065
  5070
  5075
  5080
  5085
  5090
  5095
  5100
  5105
  5110
  5115
  5120
  5125
  5130
  5135
  5140
  5145
  5150
  5155
  5160
  5165
  5170
  5175
  5180
  5185
  5190
  5195
  5200
  5205
  5210
  5215
  5220
  5225
  5230
  5235
  5240
  5245
  5250
  5255
  5260
  5265
  5270
  5275
  5280
  5285
  5290
  5295
  5300
  5305
  5310
  5315
  5320
  5325
  5330
  5335
  5340
  5345
  5350
  5355
  5360
  5365
  5370
  5375
  5380
  5385
  5390
  5395
  5400
  5405
  5410
  5415
  5420
  5425
  5430
  5435
  5440
  5445
  5450
  5455
  5460
  5465
  5470
  5475
  5480
  5485
  5490
  5495
  5500
  5505
  5510
  5515
  5520
  5525
  5530
  5535
  5540
  5545
  5550
  5555
  5560
  5565
  5570
  5575
  5580
  5585
  5590
  5595
  5600
  5605
  5610
  5615
  5620
  5625
  5630
  5635
  5640
  5645
  5650
  5655
  5660
  5665
  5670
  5675
  5680
  5685
  5690
  5695
  5700
  5705
  5710
  5715
  5720
  5725
  5730
  5735
  5740
  5745
  5750
  5755
  5760
  5765
  5770
  5775
  5780
  5785
  5790
  5795
  5800
  5805
  5810
  5815
  5820
  5825
  5830
  5835
  5840
  5845
  5850
  5855
  5860
  5865
  5870
  5875
  5880
  5885
  5890
  5895
  5900
  5905
  5910
  5915
  5920
  5925
  5930
  5935
  5940
  5945
  5950
  5955
  5960
  5965
  5970
  5975
  5980
  5985
  5990
  5995
  6000
  6005
  6010
  6015
  6020
  6025
  6030
  6035
  6040
  6045
  6050
  6055
  6060
  6065
  6070
  6075
  6080
  6085
  6090
  6095
  6100
  6105
  6110
  6115
  6120
  6125
  6130
  6135
  6140
  6145
  6150
  6155
  6160
  6165
  6170
  6175
  6180
  6185
  6190
  6195
  6200
  6205
  6210
  6215
  6220
  6225
  6230
  6235
  6240
  6245
  6250
  6255
  6260
  6265
  6270
  6275
  6280
  6285
  6290
  6295
  6300
  6305
  6310
  6315
  6320
  6325
  6330
  6335
  6340
  6345
  6350
  6355
  6360
  6365
  6370
  6375
  6380
  6385
  6390
  6395
  6400
  6405
  6410
  6415
  6420
  6425
  6430
  6435
  6440
  6445
  6450
  6455
  6460
  6465
  6470
  6475
  6480
  6485
  6490
  6495
  6500
  6505
  6510
  6515
  6520
  6525
  6530
  6535
  6540
  6545
  6550
  6555
  6560
  6565
  6570
  6575
  6580
  6585
  6590
  6595
  6600
  6605
  6610
  6615
  6620
  6625
  6630
  6635
  6640
  6645
  6650
  6655
  6660
  6665
  6670
  6675
  6680
  6685
  6690
  6695
  6700
  6705
  6710
  6715
  6720
  6725
  6730
  6735
  6740
  6745
  6750
  6755
  6760
  6765
  6770
  6775
  6780
  6785
  6790
  6795
  6800
  6805
  6810
  6815
  6820
  6825
  6830
  6835
  6840
  6845
  6850
  6855
  6860
  6865
  6870
  6875
  6880
  6885
  6890
  6895
  6900
  6905
  6910
  6915
  6920
  6925
  6930
  6935
  6940
  6945
  6950
  6955
  6960
  6965
  6970
  6975
  6980
  6985
  6990
  6995
  7000
  7005
  7010
  7015
  7020
  7025
  7030
  7035
  7040
  7045
  7050
  7055
  7060
  7065
  7070
  7075
  7080
  7085
  7090
  7095
  7100
  7105
  7110
  7115
  7120
  7125
  7130
  7135
  7140
  7145
  7150
  7155
  7160
  7165
  7170
  7175
  7180
  7185
  7190
  7195
  7200
  7205
  7210
  7215
  7220
  7225
  7230
  7235
  7240
  7245
  7250
  7255
  7260
  7265
  7270
  7275
  7280
  7285
  7290
  7295
  7300
  7305
  7310
  7315
  7320
  7325
  7330
  7335
  7340
  7345
  7350
  7355
  7360
  7365
  7370
  7375
  7380
  7385
  7390
  7395
  7400
  7405
  7410
  7415
  7420
  7425
  7430
  7435
  7440
  7445
  7450
  7455
  7460
  7465
  7470
  7475
  7480
  7485
  7490
  7495
  7500
  7505
  7510
  7515
  7520
  7525
  7530
  7535
  7540
  7545
  7550
  7555
  7560
  7565
  7570
  7575
  7580
  7585
  7590
  7595
  7600
  7605
  7610
  7615
  7620
  7625
  7630
  7635
  7640
  7645
  7650
  7655
  7660
  7665
  7670
  7675
  7680
  7685
  7690
  7695
  7700
  7705
  7710
  7715
  7720
  7725
  7730
  7735
  7740
  7745
  7750
  7755
  7760
  7765
  7770
  7775
  7780
  7785
  7790
  7795
  7800
  7805
  7810
  7815
  7820
  7825
  7830
  7835
  7840
  7845
  7850
  7855
  7860
  7865
  7870
  7875
  7880
  7885
  7890
  7895
  7900
  7905
  7910
  7915
  7920
  7925
  7930
  7935
  7940
  7945
  7950
  7955
  7960
  7965
  7970
  7975
  7980
  7985
  7990
  7995
  8000
  8005
  8010
  8015
  8020
  8025
  8030
  8035
  8040
  8045
  8050
  8055
  8060
  8065
  
```

5

10

15

20

25

30

35

45

55

```

subband : in BIT_VECTOR(1 to 2) ,
load_channel : in t_load ,
new_mode : in #tmode ,
out_1 : out BIT_VECTOR(1 to 3);
out_2 : out t_octave;
out_3 : out bit;
out_4 : out bit;
out_5 : out t_state) ;

end U_CONTROL_ENABLE;

architecture behave OF U_CONTROL_ENABLE IS
signal state:t_state;
new_state:signt_state;
BEGIN

state_machine:PROCESS(reset,new_channel,channel,c_blk,subband,load_channel,new_mode,state,new_state_sig)
VARIABLE en_blk:BIT_VECTOR(1 to 3) := B"000";
--enable blk_count,
variable lpf_block_done:bit := '0';
variable x_count FOR LPP;
variable tree_done:bit := '0';
--enable x_count FOR OTHER SUBBANDS;
variable reset_state:t_state;
variable new_state:t_state;
variable octave:t_octave := 0;
--current octave;
variable start_state:t_state;
-- dummy signals for DP1

BEGIN
-- default initial conditions
en_blk:=b"000";
lpf_block_done:='0';
tree_done:='0';


```

55

5  
10  
15  
20  
25  
30  
35  
40  
45  
50

```

octave:= 0;
reset_state:=up0;
new_state:=state;
_start_state:=up0;
--set up initial state thro mux on reset, on HR stay in zz0 state/
CASE channel IS
WHEN
WHEN
END CASE;
CASE reset IS
WHEN rat => reset_state:=" start_state";
WHEN OTHERS => reset_state := state;
END CASE;

CASE reset_state IS
WHEN up0 => octave :=2;
en_blk(3):='1';
CASE c_blk(3) IS
WHEN '1.' => CASE subband IS
WHEN B"00" => lps_block_done := '1';
--clock x_count for LPP y channel#
--change state when count done#
WHEN OTHERS => new_state := up1;
END CASE;

--in luminence & done with that tree#
CASE new_mode IS
WHEN stop => tree_done := '1';
WHEN OTHERS => null;
END CASE;
WHEN END CASE;
WHEN OTHERS => null;
END CASEB;
WHEN up1 => octave :=1;
en_blk(2):='1';
CASE c_blk(2) IS
WHEN '1.' => new_state := zz0;

```

5

10

16

35

50

55

```

--in luminance, terminate branch & move to next branch
CASE new_node IS
  WHEN stop => new_state := down1;
    WHEN en_blk(j) := '1';
      WHEN OTHERS => null;
    END CASE;
  WHEN OTHERS => null;
END CASE;

WHEN z0 => octave := 0;
  WHEN en_blk(1) := '1';
    CASE c_blk(1) IS
      WHEN '1' => new_state := z21;
        WHEN OTHERS => null;
      END CASE;
    WHEN OTHERS => null;
  END CASE;
WHEN z21 => octave := 0;
  WHEN en_blk(1) := '1';
    CASE c_blk(1) IS
      WHEN '1' => new_state := z22;
        WHEN OTHERS => null;
      END CASE;
    WHEN OTHERS => null;
  END CASE;
WHEN z22 => octave := 0;
  WHEN en_blk(1) := '1';
    CASE c_blk(1) IS
      WHEN '1' => new_state := z23;
        WHEN OTHERS => null;
      END CASE;
    WHEN OTHERS => null;
  END CASE;
WHEN z23 => octave := 0;
  WHEN en_blk(1) := '1';
    WHEN OTHERS => null;
  END CASE;
--now decide the next state, on block(1) carry check the other block carries/
--now decide the next state, on block(1) carry check the other block carries/
CASE c_blk(1) IS
  WHEN '1' => new_state := down1;
    WHEN en_blk(2) := '1';

```

5  
10  
15  
20  
25  
30  
35  
40  
45  
50  
55

```
--roll over to 0#
--because state2 clock 1 pulse#
      WHEN OTHERS => null;
      WHEN downl => octave :=1,
                      en_blk(2) := '1',
                      CASE c_blk(2) IS
                        WHEN '1' => CASE subband IS
                                      WHEN B"00" => lpf_block_done := '1';
                                      WHEN OTHERS => new_state := z20;
                        END CASE;
                        CASE new_mode IS
                          WHEN stop => CASE channel IS
                            WHEN u|v => tree_done := '1';
                            WHEN y => en_blk(3) := '1';
                            CASE c_blk(3) IS
                              WHEN '1' => tree_done := '1';
                              WHEN OTHERS => new_state := downl;
                            END CASE;
                            WHEN OTHERS => null;
                          END CASE;
                          WHEN END CASE;
                          WHEN OTHERS => null;
                        END CASE;
                      END CASE;
                    END CASE;
```

```

      5
      10
      15
      20
      25
      30
      35
      40
      45
      50
      55

CASE channel IS
  WHEN u|v => IF c_blk(1)='1' AND c_blk(2)='1' THEN tree_done := '1';
    ELSE tree_done := '0';
  END IF;

  WHEN y => IF c_blk(1)='1' AND c_blk(2)='1' AND c_blk(3)='1' THEN
    tree_done := '1';
  ELSE tree_done := '0';
  END IF;

END CASE;

--now change to start state if the sequence has finished#
CASE tree_done IS
  --In LPF state doesn't change when block done#
  WHEN '1' => new_state := start_state;
  WHEN OTHERS => null;
END CASE;

--on channel change, use starting state for new channel#
CASE load_channel IS
  --In LPF state doesn't change when block done#
  WHEN write => CASE new_channel IS
    WHEN y => new_state := up0;
    WHEN u|v => new_state := down1;
  END CASE;
  WHEN OTHERS => null;
END CASE;

new_stateSig:=new_state;

out_1 <= en_blk;
out_2 <= octave;
out_3 <= tree_done;
out_4 <= lpf_block_done;
out_5 <= reset_state;

END PROCESS;

```

5

10

15

20

25

30

45

50

55

```

DF1(ck,new_state_sig,state);
END behave;

CONFIGURATION CONTROL_ENABLE_CON OP U_CONTROL_ENABLE IS
FOR behave
BEGIN FOR/
END CONTROL_ENABLE_CON;

--The basic toggle flip-flop plus and gate for a synchronous counter
--input t is the toggle ,outputs are q and tc (toggle for next counter)
--stage
-- reset is synchronous, ie active on final count
use work.DFF_TYPES.all;
use work.dff_package.all;

entity BASIC_COUNT is
PORT(
    ck,in_bit:reset:in t_reset,en:in bit,q,out_bit,carry,out_bit);

end BASIC_COUNT;

architecture behave OF BASIC_COUNT IS
signal dlat:bit;
signal in_diff:bit;
signal reset_bit:bit;
BEGIN
WITH reset SELECT
    reset_bit <= '0' WHEN reset,
    in_diff<=(dlat XOR en) AND reset_bit;
DF1(ck,in_diff,dlat);
carry<dlat AND en;
q<dlat;
END behave;

```

```

5
10
15
20
25
30
35
40
45
50
55

configuration basic_count_con of basic_count is
  POR behave
END for;
end basic_count_con;

-- The n-bit macro counter generator, on is the enable, the outputs
-- are msb(bit 1).....lsb,carry.This is the same order as ELLA strings are stored/
use work.DWT_TYPES.all;

entity COUNT_SYNC is
  GENERIC (n:integer);
  PORT(
    ck:in bit ;
    reset:in t_reset;
    en:in bit;
    qout:bit_vector(1 to n);
    carry:out bit);
  end COUNT_SYNC;

architecture behave OF COUNT_SYNC is

COMPONENT basic_count
  PORT(
    ck:in bit ;reset:int_reset;en:in bit;qout:bit;carry:out bit);
  end COMPONENT;

signal enable:bit_vector(1 to n+1);
BEGIN
  enable(n+1)<=en;
  cl: for i in n downto 1 generate
    bc: basic_count PORT MAP(ck,reset,enables(i+1),q(i),enable(i));
  end generate;
  carry<=enable(1);
end behave;

```

```

5
10
15
20
25
30
35
40
45
50

--configuration for simulation
CONFIGURATION COUNT_SYNC_CON OF COUNT_SYNC IS
  FOR behave
    FOR ALL:basic_count USE ENTITY WORK.basic_count(behave);
  END FOR;
END FOR;
END COUNT_SYNC_CON;

--the basic x/y counter, carry out 1 cycle before final count given by x_lpf/y_lpf#
use work.DWT_TPBSS.all;
use work.dff_package.all;

entity COUNTER is
  GENERIC (ncount:integer);
  PORT(
    ck:in bit ;
    reset:in t_reset;
    en:in bit;
    x_lpf:in bit_vector(1 to ncount);
    q:out bit_vector(1 to ncount);
    carry:out bit);
end COUNTER;

architecture behave OF COUNTER IS

COMPONENT COUNT_SYNC
  GENERIC (n:integer);
  PORT(
    ck:in bit ;reset:in t_reset;en:in bit;q:out bit_vector(1 to ncount);carry:out bit);
  end COMPONENT;

signal cnt_reset:reset;
signal final_count:bit;
signal final_cnt_d:bit;
signal q_sync:bit_vector(1 to ncount);
signal carry_sync:bit;
BEGIN

```

5

10

15

20

25

30

35

```

cnt_en: count_sync GENERIC MAP(ncount) PORT MAP(ck,cnt_reset,en,q_sync,carry_sync);

q<=q_sync;
  |
  carry<=final_count;

final_count <= '1' WHEN q_sync=x_lpf AND en = '1' ELSE '0';

cnt_reset <= rst WHEN reset=rst ELSE
  rst WHEN final_count = '1' ELSE
  no_rst;
END behave;

CONFIGURATION COUNTER_CON OF COUNTER IS
FOR behave
FOR ALL:count_sync USE CONFIGURATION WORK.count_sync_conf;
END FOR;
END FOR;
END COUNTER_CON;

--the blk, or sub-band counters, carry out on 3, cout_en enables the carry out, & cin_en AND en enables the
count# use work.DWT_TYPES.all;

entity BLK_SUB_COUNT IS

PORT(
  ck:in bit ;reset:in t_reset;en,cln_en,cout_en:in bit;qout_bit_vector(1 to 2);carryout_bit);
end BLK_SUB_COUNT;

```

architecture behave OF BLK\_SUB\_COUNT IS

```

COMPONENT count_sync
GENERIC (n:integer);
PORT(
  ck:in bit ;reset:in t_reset;en:in bit;qout_bit_vector(1 to 2);carryout_bit);
signal q_sync:bit_vector(1 to 2);

```

55

```

5
10
15
20
25
30
35
40
45
50
55

signal carry_sync:bit;
signal enable:bit;
BEGIN
  enable <= en AND cin_en;
  q=q_sync;
  carry<= '1' WHEN q_sync = b"11" AND cout_en = '1' ELSE '0';
END behave;
  b_cnt: count_sync GENERIC MAP(2) PORT MAP(ck,reset,enable,q_sync,carry_sync);

CONFIGURATION BLK_SUB_CON OF BLK_SUB_COUNT IS
  FOR behave
    FOR b_cnt : count_sync USE CONFIGURATION WORK.count_sync_con;
      END FOR;
    END FOR;
  END BLK_SUB_CON;
--the L1 norm comparison constants flag values--
--adding 4 absolute data values so result can grow by 2 bits--
--5 cycle sequence, a reset cycle with no data input, followed by 4 data cycles--

use work.DFT_TYPES.all;
use work.dft_package.all;
use work.util.all;

entity U_LINORM IS
  GENERIC(n:integer);
  PORT(
    ck : in bit ;
    reset : in t_reset ;
    in_a : in BIT_VECTOR(1 to n) ;
    out_1 : out BIT_VECTOR(1 to n+2) );

```

5

10

15

20

25

30

35

```

end U_LINORM;

architecture behave OF U_LINORM IS
begin
  msb <= ALL_SAME(n,in_s(1));
  add_inl <= (in_s XOR msb);
  WITH reset SELECT
    rst_mux <= ZERO(n+4) WHEN rst
                                add_out(2 to n+5) WHEN OTHERS;
  --carryin bit to adder
  carry <= 1 WHEN in_s(1)='1' ELSE
                0;
  adder <= S_TO_I(add_inl) + S_TO_I(in2) + carry;
  I_TO_S(addr,add_out);

  D71(n+4,clk,rst_mux,in2);
  --procedure outputs--
  out_1 <= in2(3 to n+4);
end;

```

50

55

5

10

15

20

25

30

45

50

55

```

CONFIGURATION U_LINORM_CON OF U_LINORM IS
  FOR behave
    END FOR;
    BND U_LINORM15 CON;
    --the block to decide if all its inputs are all 0--
    use work.DWT_TYPES.all;
    use work.def_package.all;

  entity U_ALL_ZERO IS
    PORT(
      ck : In bit ;
      reset : In t_reset ;
      in_in : In t_input ;
      out_1 : Out bit );
  end U_ALL_ZERO;

architecture behave OF U_ALL_ZERO IS
  signal out_b:bit;
  signal in_eq_0:bit;
  signal all_eq_0:bit;
BEGIN
  in_eq_0 <= '1' WHEN in_in = 0 ELSE
    --in =0 --
    --1 if reset high, & OR with previous flag--
  all_eq_0 <= in_eq_0 WHEN reset = '0' ELSE
    in_eq_0;
    out_b='0' ELSE
    out_b='1';

  DFL(ck,all_eq_0,out_b);

```

5

10

15

20

25

30

40

45

50

55

```

--procedure outputs---

out_1 <= out_bit;

END;

CONFIGURATION U_ALL_ZERO_CON OF U_ALL_ZERO IS
FOR behave
END FOR;
END U_ALL_ZERO_CON;

use work.DWT_TYPES.all;
use work.dif_package.all;
use work.util.all;

entity U_ABS_NORM IS
GENERIC(n:positive);
PORT(
  ck : in bit ;
  reset : in t_reset ;
  qshift : in BIT_VECTOR(1 to result_exp-2) ;
  in_in : in t_input:=0,
  out_1 : out BIT_VECTOR(1 to n+2),
  out_2 : out bit);
end U_ABS_NORM;

architecture behave of U_ABS_NORM is

signal adder_out:BIT_VECTOR(1 to n+5);
signal ret_msk:BIT_VECTOR(1 to n+4);
signal in2:BIT_VECTOR(1 to n+4);
signal add_Bit_VECTOR(1 to n+4);
signal add_integer:=0;
signal abs_int:integer:=0;

```

5

10

15

20

25

30

40

45

50

55

```

signal in_small:bit;
signal all_small:bit;
signal out_b:bit;
BEGIN

abs_in <= abs(in_ln);
adder <= abs_in + s_TO_I(ln2);
I_TO_S(adder,adder_str);
add_s <= adder_str(2 to (n+s));
WITH reset SELECT
rst_mux <= ZERO(n+4) WHEN rst ,
add_s WHEN OTHERS;

in_small <= '1' WHEN abs_in <= U_TO_I(qshift) ELSE
                           '0';

--1 if reset high, & OR with previous flag--
all_small <= '1' WHEN reset=rst ELSE
                           '0' WHEN in_small = '0' ELSE
                           out_b;

DF1(n+4,ck,rst_mux,in2);
DF1(ck,all_small,out_b);
--procedure outputs--
out_1 <= ln2(3 to n+4);
out_2 <= out_b;
END;

CONFIGURATION U_ABS_NORM_CIN_OF_U_ABS_NORM IS
POR behave

```

5

10

15

20

25

30

40

45

50

55

```

END FOR;
END U_ABS_NORM CON;
--the decide fn block--
use work.DWT_TYPES.all;
use work.dff_package.all;
use work.util.all;

entity U_DECIDE IS
PORT(
    ck : in bit ;
    reset : in t_reset ;
    q_int : in t_result ;
    nv,old : in t_input ;
    threshold,comparison : in t_result ;
    octs : in t_octave ;
    load_flag : in t_load ;
    out_1 : out BIT_VECTOR(1 to 7) );
end U_DECIDE;

```

architecture behave of U\_DECIDE is

```

COMPONENT U_LINORM
GENERIC(n:integer);
PORT(
    ck : in bit ;
    reset : in t_reset ;
    in_s : in BIT_VECTOR(1 to n) ;
    out_1 : out BIT_VECTOR(1 to n+2) );
end COMPONENT;

```

```

COMPONENT U_ABS_NORM
GENERIC(n:positve);

```

5

10

15

20

25

30

50

55

```

PORT{
  ck : In bit ;
  reset : In t_reset ;
  qshift : In BIT_VECTOR(1 to result_exp-2) ;
  in_in : In t_input ;
  out_1 : Out BIT_VECTOR(1 to n+2) ;
  out_2 : Out bit ;
  end COMPONENT;
}

--nzflag,origin,noflag,offlag,motion,pro_new_z,pro_no_z--

signal nz_plus_oz:BIT_VECTOR(1 to input_exp+3);
signal shift_add:BIT_VECTOR(1 to input_exp+3);
signal nz_str:BIT_VECTOR(1 to input_exp);
signal old_str:BIT_VECTOR(1 to input_exp);
signal Q_int_str:BIT_VECTOR(1 to result_exp);
signal no_str:BIT_VECTOR(1 to input_exp+1);
signal nz_1:BIT_VECTOR(1 to input_exp+2);
signal oz_1:BIT_VECTOR(1 to input_exp+2);
signal no_1:BIT_VECTOR(1 to input_exp+3);
signal qshift:BIT_VECTOR(1 to result_exp-2);
signal flags:BIT_VECTOR(1 to 7);

signal decide_flags:BIT_VECTOR(1 to 7);
signal no_o:integer;
signal nz: natural:=0;
signal oz: natural:=0;
signal no: natural:=0;
signal nzflag: bit;
signal offlag: bit;
signal noflag: bit;
signal origin: bit;
signal motion: bit;
signal new_z: bit;
signal no_z: bit;
signal nz_2: bit;
signal no_2: bit;

```

5

10

15

20

25

30

45

50

55

```

signal octs_del: t_octave;
BEGIN
  I_TO_S(q_int,q_int_str);

  qshift <= q_int_str(1 to result_exp-2);
  --divide by 4 as test is on coeff values not block values--
  n_o  <= nw - old;
  --new-old;use from quant--

  -- convert to string for LINORM
  I_TO_S(n_o,n_o_str);
  I_TO_S(nw,nw_str);
  I_TO_S(old,old_str);

  --convert to unsigned integer
  nz <= U_TO_I(nz_1);
  oz <= U_TO_I(oz_1);
  no <= U_TO_I(no_1);

  nzflag <= '1' WHEN nz <= threshold_ELR
  noflag <= '1' WHEN no <= comparison_ELR
  ozflag <= '1' WHEN oz = 0 ELSE
    '0';
  origin <= '1' WHEN nz <= no ELSE
    '0';
  I_TO_S(nz + oz,nz_plus_oz);

  new_z  <= nz_2;
  no_z   <= no_2;

  --delay octs to match pipeline delay--

  DP1(ch,octs,octs_del);

```

```

5
10
15
20
25
30
35
40
45
50
55

--keep 13 bits here to match no; keep mob's--
--delay octs to match pipeline delay--
WITH OCTS_DEL $PLBCT

shift_add <= nz_plus_oz(1 to Input_exp+3) WHEN 0,
          B"0" & nz_plus_oz(1 to Input_exp+2) WHEN 1,
          B"00" & nz_plus_oz(1 to Input_exp+1) WHEN 2,
          B"000" & nz_plus_oz(1 to Input_exp) WHEN 3;

motion <= '1' WHEN U_TO_I(shift_add) <= no ELSE
          '0';

decide_flags <= nzflag&origlnenoflags&flag& motion&new_z&no_z;

abs_1: U_ABS_NORM GENERIC MAP(Input_exp) PORT MAP(clk,reset,qshift,nw,nz_1,nz_2);
LATCH(7,load_flags,decide_flags);

abs_2: U_ABS_NORM GENERIC MAP(Input_exp+1) PORT MAP(clk,reset,qshift,n_o,no_1,no_2);

lin: U_LINORM GENERIC MAP(Input_exp) PORT MAP(clk,reset,old_str,oz_1);

--procedure outputs---

out_1 <= flags 1
END;

CONFIGURATION U_DECIDE_CON OF U_DECIDE IS
  FOR behave
    FOR ALL: U_ABS_NORM USE ENTITY WORK.U_ABS_NORM(behave);
    END FOR;
    FOR ALL: U_LINORM USE ENTITY WORK.U_LINORM(behave);
    END FOR;
  END FOR;
END U_DECIDE_CON;
-- create the rising edge function, and a model of a active high DFF.

```

```

      5
      10
      15
      20
      25
      30
      35
      40
      45
      50
      55

use work.DUT_TYPES.all;
use work.util.all;
use work.dff.all;

package dff_package is

FUNCTION rising_edge (SIGNAL s:bit) return boolean;

PROCEDURE DFL_LOAD(
  SIGNAL ck:in bit; SIGNAL d:in integer; SIGNAL q:out BIT_VECTOR);

PROCEDURE DFL_LOAD(
  SIGNAL ck:in bit; SIGNAL d:in t_load; SIGNAL q:in BIT_VECTOR; SIGNAL q:out BIT_VECTOR);

PROCEDURE DFL_LOAD(
  SIGNAL ck:in bit; SIGNAL d:in t_load; SIGNAL q:in t_high_low; SIGNAL q:out t_high_low);

PROCEDURE DFL(
  SIGNAL ck:in bit; SIGNAL d:in integer; SIGNAL q:out integer);

PROCEDURE DFL(
  SIGNAL ck:in bit; SIGNAL d:in t_direction; SIGNAL q:out t_direction);

PROCEDURE DFL(
  SIGNAL ck:in bit; SIGNAL d:in t_state; SIGNAL q:out t_state);

PROCEDURE DFL(
  SIGNAL ck:in bit; SIGNAL d:in t_reset; SIGNAL q:out t_reset);

PROCEDURE DFL(
  SIGNAL ck:in bit; SIGNAL d:in bit; SIGNAL q:out bit);

PROCEDURE DFL(CONSTANT n:in integer;
  SIGNAL ck:in bit; SIGNAL d:in bit_vector; SIGNAL q:out bit_vector);

PROCEDURE DFF(
  SIGNAL ck:in bit; SIGNAL d:in integer; SIGNAL d:in integer; SIGNAL q:out integer);

```

```

5
10
15
20
25
30
35
40
45
50
55

PROCEDURE DFF(
  SIGNAL ck:in bit;reset:in t_reset;SIGNAL d:in t_reset;SIGNAL q:out t_reset);
  SIGNAL qf;
PROCEDURE DFF(
  SIGNAL ck:in bit;reset:in t_reset;SIGNAL d:in bit;SIGNAL q:out bit);
PROCEDURE DPP(
  SIGNAL ck:in bit;reset:in t_reset;SIGNAL d:in t_load;SIGNAL q:out t_load);

PROCEDURE DPP_INIT(
  SIGNAL ck:in bit;reset:in t_reset;load:in t_load;SIGNAL d:in integer;SIGNAL q:out integer);
PROCEDURE DPP_INIT(
  SIGNAL ck:in bit;reset:in t_reset;load:in t_load;SIGNAL d:in t_channel;SIGNAL q:out t_channel);
PROCEDURE DPP_INIT(
  SIGNAL ck:in bit;reset:in t_reset;load:in t_load;SIGNAL d:in t_diff;SIGNAL q:out t_diff);
PROCEDURE DPP_INIT(
  SIGNAL ck:in bit;reset:in t_reset;load:in t_load;SIGNAL d:in t_mode;SIGNAL q:out t_mode);
PROCEDURE DPP_INIT(CONSTANT n:natural;
  SIGNAL ck:in bit;reset:in t_reset;load:in t_load;SIGNAL d:in BIT_VECTOR;SIGNAL q:out BIT_VECTOR);
PROCEDURE DPP_INIT(
  SIGNAL ck:in bit;reset:in t_reset;load:in t_load;SIGNAL d:in t_high_low;SIGNAL q:out t_high_low);

PROCEDURE LATCH(CONSTANT n:in integer;
  load:in t_load;SIGNAL d:in bit_vector;SIGNAL q:out bit_vector);
end diff_package;

package body diff_package is

```

**This Page is Inserted by IFW Indexing and Scanning  
Operations and is not part of the Official Record**

## **BEST AVAILABLE IMAGES**

Defective images within this document are accurate representations of the original documents submitted by the applicant.

Defects in the images include but are not limited to the items checked:

- BLACK BORDERS**
- IMAGE CUT OFF AT TOP, BOTTOM OR SIDES**
- FADED TEXT OR DRAWING**
- BLURRED OR ILLEGIBLE TEXT OR DRAWING**
- SKEWED/SLANTED IMAGES**
- COLOR OR BLACK AND WHITE PHOTOGRAPHS**
- GRAY SCALE DOCUMENTS**
- LINES OR MARKS ON ORIGINAL DOCUMENT**
- REFERENCE(S) OR EXHIBIT(S) SUBMITTED ARE POOR QUALITY**
- OTHER:** \_\_\_\_\_

**IMAGES ARE BEST AVAILABLE COPY.**

**As rescanning these documents will not correct the image problems checked, please do not report these problems to the IFW Image Problem Mailbox.**